

New

Bit by Bit

كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية

Hello! 2

الصف الأول الإعدادي الفصل الدراسي الأول



0
2
4

دار غزة
للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع



QR CODES
Listen to Vocabulary
& Texts

1st
Prep.
First Term

التوزيع : ١٠ شارع كامل صدقي - الفجالة - القاهرة. ت : 25919165
للاستعلام وإبداء الآراء والاقتراحات - الإدارة : تليفون : 25880102

Contents

Part 1

- Revision & Exercises
- Writing skills (How to answer new questions):
(Dialogues - Reading comprehension -
Read and correct - Write a paragraph)
- Exam specifications

Part 2

- Check your English!

Module 1: Family and friends

- Unit (1) : My family and me
- Unit (2) : It's my favourite subject
- Unit (3) : Different people

Review (A)

Module 2: The world around us

- Unit (4) : We're using technology!
- Unit (5) : Holidays
- Unit (6) : Let's eat!

Review (B)

Part 3

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| • General Exercises | • Paragraphs |
| • End of Term Practice | • SB / WB Answers |
| • Final Exams | • Listening material |
| • Azhar Exams | • Irregular verbs |

Booklet (free with the book)

- Dictation
- Homework exercises on each unit
- Test on each two units

Part 1

Revision & Exercises

مراجعة وتمارين على ما سبق دراسته بالمرحلة الابتدائية



Vocabulary Review

مراجعة على المفردات

A / a

abroad	بالخارج
accident	حادثة
address	عنوان (مكان)
aeroplane	طائرة
age	عمر - سن
any	أي
around	حول

B / b

birthday	عيد ميلاد
board	سبورة
bottle	زجاجة
brush	فرشاة

C / c

candle	شمعة
chair	كرسي
change	باقي النقود (فكة)
children	اطفال
circle	دائرة
city	مدينة كبيرة
clock	ساعة حائط
cloud	سحابة
coin	عملة معدنية
computer	جهاز كمبيوتر
cup	فنجان
cupboard	دولاب

D / d

daily	يوميًا
date	تاريخ (اليوم مثلاً)
degree	درجة
dessert	تحلية (بعد الأكل)
dish	طبق «عميق»
dream	حلم

E / e

Egyptians	مصريون
email	بريد الكيتروني
evening	مساء
everyone	كل واحد / الجميع
everything	كل شيء
exercise	تمرين (رياضي)

F / f

favourite	مفضل
flag	علم
flight	رحلة جوية
fun	مرح - مُتعة

G / g

glass	زجاج / كوب زجاجي
glasses	نظارة
gold	الذهب
grade	مرحلة - صف دراسي

H / h

headache	صداع
history	تاريخ
holiday	إجازة (عطلة)
homework	الواجب المدرسي
hour	ساعة (٦٠ دقيقة)
hundred	مائة

I / i

ice	ثلج
idea	فكرة
information	معلومات
internet	شبكة الانترنت

J / j

jar	برطمان
jewellery	مجوهرات
jug	إبريق

K / k

key	مفتاح
kid	طفل
kind	نوع
kite	طائرة ورقية

L / l

leaves	أوراق الشجر
left	يسار
light	ضوء / لمبة
litter	قمامة
letter	خطاب

M / m

many	كثير (للعدد)
map	خريطة
mat	سجادة

medicine	دواء
menu	قائمة طعام
minute	دقيقة
mistake	خطأ
moon	قمر
much	كثير (للكمية)

N / n

news	أخبار
newspaper	جريدة
night	ليلة / الليل
noise	ضوضاء

O / o

office	مكتب (للعمل)
--------	--------------

P / p

pain	ألم
paper	ورق / ورقة / جريدة
party	حفلة
percent	نسبة مئوية
picnic	نزهة خلوية
plate	طبق (مسطح)
pound	جنيه (عملة)
present	هدية
programme	برنامج

Q / q

quickly	بسرعة
---------	-------

R / r

right	يمين
rock	صخرة
rope	حبل

S / s

sand	رمل
scissors	مقص
seat	مقعد (ثابت)
shape	شكل
shelf / shelves	رف / أرفف
sky	السماء
snow	جليد
stone	حجر
story	قصة
subject	مادة دراسية
sunglasses	نظارة شمسية
sure	بالتأكيد

T / t

team	فريق
thousand	ألف (1000)
ticket	تذكرة
tomorrow	غدا
tonight	الليلة
toothbrush	فرشاة أسنان
toothpaste	معجون أسنان
train	قطار
trip	رحلة
truck	شاحنة
true	صحيح - حقيقي
tube	أنبوب
twice	مرتين

U / u

umbrella	شمسية
underground	مترو الأنفاق

V / v

van	شاحنة صغيرة
vase	زهريّة
village	قرية
volleyball	الكرة الطائرة

W / w

wall	حائط
wallet	محفظة
weather	الطقس - الجو
website	موقع على الانترنت
without	بدون
(the) world	العالم
wrong	خطأ

Y / y

year	سنة
yesterday	أمس

Z / z

zero	صفر
zoo	حديقة حيوان

Remember

Family العائلة

father = dad	أب	aunt	العمة / الخالة	grandmother	الجدة
mother = mum	أم	uncle	العم / الخال	brother	الأخ
parents	الوالدين	grandfather	الجد	sister	الأخت

Jobs الوظائف

engineer	مهندس	vet	طبيب بيطري	driver	سائق
teacher	مدرس	singer	مغن - مطرب	doctor	طبيب
nurse	ممرضة	farmer	فلاح	baker	خباز
policeman	رجل شرطة	worker	عامل	cook	طباخ
firefighter	رجل إطفاء	dentist	طبيب أسنان	artist	رسام
clerk	موظف	pilot	طيار	mechanic	ميكانيكي

Parts of the body أجزاء الجسم

arm	ذراع	foot (feet)	قدم (أقدام)	finger	أصبع اليد
hand	يد	ear	أذن	toe	أصبع القدم
hair	شعر	nose	أنف	mouth	فم
head	رأس	neck	رقبة - عنق	stomach	معدة
face	وجه	leg	ساق	tooth (teeth)	سنة (أسنان)
eye	عين	knee	ركبة	back	ظهر

Foods and drinks أطعمة ومشروبات

potatoes	بطاطس	cake	كيك	oranges	برتقال
bananas	موز	chocolate	شيكولاتة	apples	تفاح
bread	خبز	rice	أرز	biscuits	بسكويت
sandwich	ساندوتش	fish	سمك	chips	شرائح بطاطس
meat	لحم	tomatoes	طماطم	tea	شاي
cheese	جبنة (جبنة)	sweets	حلوى	milk	لبن
vegetables	خضراوات	honey	عسل	beans	فول
fruit	فاكهة	nut	حبة جوز / لوز / مكسرات	salt	ملح
peaches	خوخ	ice cream	آيس كريم	lemons	ليمون
coffee	قهوة	chicken	دجاجة / لحم دجاج	cucumbers	خيار
juice	عصير	pizza	بيتزا	carrots	جزر
jam	مربى	lemonade	عصير ليمون	cookies	كعك
butter	زبدة	salad	سلطة	pepper	فلفل

Rooms and places in the house حجرات وأماكن بالمنزل

bedroom	غرفة النوم	bathroom	حمام	garden	حديقة منزل
living room	غرفة المعيشة	kitchen	مطبخ	dining room	غرفة المائدة - غرفة الطعام
flat	شقة	garage	جراج	hall	صالة

Clothes ملابس

trousers	بنطلون	T-shirt	تي شيرت	shoes	حذاء
dress	فستان	jacket	جاكت	boots	حذاء برقبة
shirt	قميص	socks	جورب (شراب)	hat	قبعة
jeans	بنطلون جينز	skirt	جيبه	coat	معطف (بالطو)

Animals and Birds حيوانات وطيور

rabbit	أرنب	zebra	حمار وحشي	parrot	بغاء (بغبان)
fox	ثعلب	horse	حصان	snake	ثعبان
frog	ضفدعة	cow	بقرة	lion	أسد
giraffe	زرافة	goat	ماعز	bear	دب
elephant	فيل	camel	جمل	panda	الباندا
monkey	قرد	sheep	خروف	tiger	نمر
kangaroo	حيوان الكانجرو	canary	عصفور الكناري	lizard	سحلية
turtle	سلحفاة	eagle	عقاب	kitten	قطعة صغيرة (هريرة)

Adjectives صفات

delicious	لذيذ	dangerous	خطير	ugly	قبيح
funny	مضحك	quiet	هادئ	beautiful	جميل
difficult	صعب	easy	سهل	careful	حريص

Places أماكن

bank	مصرف (بنك)	playground	ملعب	desert	صحراء
library	مكتبة (للقراءة والاستعارة)	pavement	رصيف الشارع	gift shop	محل هدايا
shop	محل	river	نهر	lake	بحيرة
airport	مطار	station	محطة	mountain	جبل
city	مدينة	hospital	مستشفى	park	متنزه / موقف للسيارات
field	حقل	factory	مصنع	post office	مكتب بريد
house	منزل	school	مدرسة	restaurant	مطعم
market	سوق	bookshop	مكتبة (بيع الكتب)	road	طريق
office	مكتب (للعمل)	bus stop	محطة أتوبيس	town	مدينة

Prepositions حروف جر

next to	بجوار	on	على	near	قريب
behind	خلف	under	تحت	far	بعيد
in front of	أمام	above	فوق	in	في
between	بين				

Months of the year / شهور السنة

1. January	يناير	2. February	فبراير	3. March	مارس
4. April	أبريل	5. May	مايو	6. June	يونيه
7. July	يوليو	8. August	أغسطس	9. September	سبتمبر
10. October	أكتوبر	11. November	نوفمبر	12. December	ديسمبر

Seasons and the weather / فصول السنة والطقس

winter	الشتاء	cold	بارد	warm	دافئ
spring	الربيع	windy	عاصف	rainy	مطير
summer	الصيف	hot	حار	sunny	مشمس
fall	الخريف				

Meals / وجبات

breakfast	الإفطار	lunch	العشاء	dinner	العشاء
snack	وجبة خفيفة				

- يوجد جدول لأهم الأفعال غير المنتظمة في آخر الكتاب

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Tomorrow I'll go to the _____ to borrow a book.
 a bank b library c kitchen d shop
- He has got a lot of _____ on his birthday.
 a presents b parties c animals d newspapers
- You should do your _____ when you go home from school.
 a letter b rubbish c homework d lunch
- I use my computer to send _____ to my friends.
 a emails b letters c screens d paragraphs
- _____ help sick people in hospitals.
 a Pilots b Nurses c Cooks d Drivers
- English is my favourite school _____.
 a subject b sport c food d garden
- A _____ grows food and keeps animals.
 a mechanic b cook c farmer d clerk
- I couldn't _____ a bike when I was four.
 a read b drive c write d ride
- Pilots can _____ planes.
 a drive b ride c play d fly
- The cake was very _____. I ate it all.
 a dangerous b delicious c difficult d funny
- The cat is standing _____ the tree.
 a behind b next c to d between

Revision & Exercises

12. She is my I love her.
a father **b** brother **c** uncle **d** sister
13. The is a very big animal.
a frog **b** mouse **c** elephant **d** goat
14. Who the first prize?
a kicked **b** won **c** played **d** did
15. I picked up the and ordered my lunch.
a menu **b** ticket **c** soup **d** plane
16. I could high when I was young.
a dance **b** sleep **c** jump **d** walk
17. We always have our lunch in the
a living room **b** bedroom **c** bathroom **d** dining room
18. What's your food?
a happy **b** lazy **c** favourite **d** old
19. Mum is going to a cake for my birthday.
a make **b** throw **c** do **d** sell
20. Were you lunch at two yesterday?
a feeding **b** leaving **c** throwing **d** having

B

Grammar Review

مراجعة على القواعد

1) Pronouns & Possessive adjectives

الضمائر وصفات الملكية

ضمائر فاعل	ضمائر مفعول	صفات ملكية يتبعها اسم	ضمائر ملكية لا يتبعها اسم	ضمائر منعكسة
I أنا	me	my —	mine	myself
You أنت	you	your —	yours	yourself
He هو	him	his —	his	himself
She هي	her	her —	hers	herself
It هو / هي (لغير العاقل)	it	its —	—	itself
You أنتم	you	your —	yours	yourselves
We نحن	us	our —	ours	ourselves
They هم	them	their —	theirs	themselves

Ex. 1. I am busy now.
 2. This is my bike.

3. Help me, please.
 4. This bike is mine.

2) Verb "to be" فعل «يكون»

Present simple

am is are

Ex. 1. I am (=m) a pupil.
 2. She is (=s) a nurse.
 3. They are (=re) clever.

Past simple

was were

Ex. 1. The teacher was angry.
 2. Two years ago, they were in grade 4.

3 Tenses الأزمنة

A The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

فاعل	إثبات	نفي	استفهام
I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	inf. مصدر الفعل	don't + inf. never + inf.	Do + (كلمة إستفهام) + فاعل + inf.?
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	inf. + s / es / ies	doesn't + inf. never + inf + s / es / ies	Does + (كلمة إستفهام) + فاعل + inf.?

Keywords

كلمات دالة

every (day - week - month - year) - always - usually - often - sometimes - never

Usage استخدام

يعبر عن حقائق - أفعال متكررة وعادات

- Ex. 1. We **help** mum at home. 4. Ali **lives** in Giza.
 2. We **don't make** noise. 5. Mona **doesn't live** in Giza.
 3. **Do they have** a car? 6. **Does Aya live** in Giza?
 - Yes, they **do**. / No, they **don't**. - Yes, she **does**. / No, she **doesn't**.

B The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

إثبات	نفي	استفهام
فاعل فعل في التصريف الثاني + فاعل	didn't + inf. + فاعل	Did + (كلمة إستفهام) + فاعل + inf.?

Keywords

كلمات دالة

yesterday - last (week - month - year) - ago - in the past - once - in 2015

Usage استخدام

يعبر عن فعل حدث وانتهى في وقت محدد في الماضي

- Ex. 1. She **cooked** fish yesterday. 3. **Did she cook** rice yesterday?
 2. She **didn't cook** meat yesterday. - Yes, she **did**. / No, she **didn't**.

C The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر

فاعل	إثبات	نفي	استفهام
I He / She / It / اسم مفرد We / You / They / اسم جمع	am is are } + v-ing	am is are } not + v-ing	+ (كلمة إستفهام) Am Is Are } + فاعل + v-ing?

Keywords

كلمات دالة

Look! - Listen! - now - at the moment - at present

Usage استخدام

١- يستخدم لوصف صورة. ٢- يعبر عن فعل يحدث الآن.

- Ex.** 1. Sama and Shrouk **are cooking** lunch now.
 2. Rahma **is not taking** photos at the moment.
 3. What **are** Youssef and Omar **doing**?
 4. **Is** Osman **reading** a book now? - Yes, he **is**. / No, he **isn't**.

D The past continuous tense زمن الماضي المستمر

فاعل	إثبات	نفي	استفهام
I He / She / It / اسم مفرد	was + v-ing	was not + v-ing	(كلمة إستفهام) + Was + فاعل + v-ing?
We / You / They / اسم جمع	were + v-ing	were not + v-ing	Were + فاعل + v-ing?

Keywords

كلمات دالة

when / while / as

Usage استخدام

يعبر عن حدث كان مستمراً في وقت محدد في الماضي /
حدث كان مستمراً في الماضي عندما قطعه حدث آخر

- Ex.** 1. I **was reading** a book. 3. He **wasn't eating** cake.
 2. **Were** you **flying** a kite?

استخدام
when / while

ماضي بسيط + **when** + ماضي مستمر

ماضي مستمر + **while** + ماضي بسيط

لاحظ الآتي:

- Ex.** 1. I **was playing** tennis **when** my sister **came**.
 2. They **found** a book **while** they **were looking** for their bags.

E The future simple tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

إثبات	نفي	استفهام
فاعل + will + inf.	فاعل + will not (won't) + inf.	Will + فاعل + inf.?

Keywords

كلمات دالة

tomorrow - in the future - next (week - month - year)

Usage استخدام

يعبر عن شيء سوف يحدث في المستقبل

- Ex.** 1. She **will visit** us tomorrow. 3. **Will** you **do** your homework?
 2. They **will not (won't)** sing. - Yes, I **will**. / No, I **won't**.

F The future with (going to)

مصدر الفعل + inf. سوف + am / is / are + going to + فاعل

- يعبر عن فعل مخطط له في المستقبل.

- Ex.** 1. She **is going to visit** her aunt next month.
 2. We're **going to** watch a new film this evening.

Exercises on Grammar**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- Please, tell _____ about your trip to Aswan.
a we **b** us **c** our **d** he
- This book is _____ ; it's not yours.
a my **b** me **c** mine **d** our
- Cats always clean _____.
a themselves **b** their **c** them **d** yourself
- Hani _____ buy a new car next year.
a are going to **b** going to **c** is going to **d** was going
- A:** What is your mother's job? **B:** She _____ a nurse.
a was **b** is **c** be **d** are
- Two weeks ago, I _____ in Luxor.
a was **b** am **c** were **d** are
- They are _____ TV now.
a watch **b** watched **c** watches **d** watching
- A:** _____ you drink the milk? **B:** No, I didn't.
a Do **b** Did **c** Does **d** Doing
- Hatem _____ his uncle next Sunday.
a visited **b** visits **c** visit **d** will visit
- Nawal _____ like fish. She likes chicken.
a didn't **b** won't **c** doesn't **d** don't
- A:** What are the children _____ ? **B:** They're eating sandwiches.
a did **b** doing **c** do **d** does
- Mum _____ cook fish last week. She cooked meat.
a don't **b** doesn't **c** did **d** didn't
- _____ you visit your uncle tomorrow?
a Will **b** Are **c** Do **d** Were
- A:** Where _____ Shadia live? **B:** She lives in Tanta.
a do **b** did **c** does **d** are
- Did Noha _____ her homework yesterday?
a do **b** does **c** doing **d** done

Writing Skills



معالجة للأسئلة الصعبة التي قد تواجه الطالب في امتحان الصف الأول الإعدادي

How to
answer

- Dialogues
- Reading comprehensions
- Read and correct the underlined words
- Paragraphs

1 Dialogue

كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال المحادثة

- يعطى الطالب محادثة مكونة من عشرة تبادلات حوارية بها خمسة فراغات (ثلاثة ردود وسؤالين)
- مطلوب من الطالب أن يكمل الفراغات.
- المحادثة يسبقها موقف توضيحي.

كيفية تكوين السؤال لاستخدامه في حل سؤال المحادثة

ينقسم السؤال إلى نوعين:

1 السؤال بـ (هل.....؟) Yes / No question

- إذا اشتملت الإجابة على Yes, / No تبدأ السؤال بفعل مساعد أو ناقص ويكون معناه «هل...؟»
- الأفعال المساعدة والناقصة تعد جزءاً أساسياً في تكوين أى سؤال

Helping verbs الأفعال المساعدة

am - is - are - was - were - have -
has - had

Modals الأفعال الناقصة

can - could - shall - should - will -
would - may - might - must

- إذا كان بالجملة أى من الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة السابقة نستخدمه في السؤال كآتي:

A Yes, he can play tennis.

Q Can he play tennis?

- إذا لم يكن بالجملة فعل مساعد أو ناقص نستخدم do / does / did حسب زمن الجملة.

A Yes, Rana comes early.

Q Does Rana come early?

A Yes, I played tennis.

Q Did you play tennis?

Wh-question السؤال بكلمة استفهام 2

- نستخدم كلمات الاستفهام في السؤال حسب الإجابة الموجودة (مكان - زمان - شخص - شيء - طريقة ...)

..... فعل → فاعل → فعل مساعد / ناقص → كلمة استفهام

A She is eating in the dining room.

Q Where is she eating?

Question words ؟

What	ما / ماذا (للأشياء)	What time	ما الوقت
Where	أين (للمكان)	What colour	ما لون
Who	من (للأشخاص)	What subject	ما المادة الدراسية
Whose	لمن (للسؤال عن الملكية)	How many	كم العدد
When	متى (للمن)	How long	ما المدة / طول
Why	لماذا (للسبب)	How heavy	ما وزن
Which	أيهما (للتخيير)	How much	ما ثمن / كم كمية
How	كيف (للطريقة / للحال)	How often	كم عدد المرات
What class	ما الصف الدراسي		



1 إذا كان الفعل الأساسي في الجملة (have - has - had) يعامل مثل أي فعل آخر باستخدام do - does - did.

A They have a nice car.

Q What do they have?

A He has lunch at 2 o'clock.

Q When does he have lunch?

2 إذا كان الفعل الأساسي في الجملة (do - does - did) يعامل مثل أي فعل آخر.

A Huda does her homework at night.

Q When does Huda do her homework?

A Sama did exercise in the morning.

Q When did Sama do exercise?

3 السؤال عن الفاعل: عندما نسأل عن الفاعل نحذفه ونضع مكانه كلمة الإستفهام ونكمل الجملة كما هي:

A Ahmed wins the game.

Q Who wins the game?

A A car crashed into the wall.

Q What crashed into the wall?

- عندما نسأل بـ Who عن مفعول عاقل نكوّن السؤال بالطريقة المعتادة باستخدام فعل ناقص أو مساعد بعدها:

A I met Ahmed.

Q Who did you meet?

4 السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام (How many)

- يأتي بعدها مباشرة الاسم الذي يعد ثم الفعل المساعد / الناقص ثم الفاعل.

A I bought 5 **books**.

Q **How many books** did you buy?

5 السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام [How tall - long - wide - high - old]

Q How **tall** is the building? → **A** It's 30 metres **tall**.

Q How **wide** is the room? → **A** It's 5 metres **wide**.

Q How **high** is the mountain? → **A** It's 20 metres **high**.

Q How **old** is Mai? → **A** She's 10 years **old**.

Model question ?

نموذج السؤال كما يأتي في الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

Complete the following dialogue:

Basem and Farida are talking about Farida's best friend.

Basem : Who is your best friend, Farida?

Farida : My best friend is a girl called Amal.

Basem : ① ?

Farida : She is 13 years old.

Basem : What are her ② ?

Farida : Science and maths.

Basem : What is her favourite ③ ?

Farida : She ④ basketball.

Basem : Is she tall?

Farida : Yes, ⑤

Answer 1- How old is she? 2- favourite subjects 3- sport 4- likes 5- she is

2 Reading Comprehension

كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال قطعة الفهم

- يعطى الطالب نص مكون من حوالي ١٠٠ كلمة.

- مطلوب من الطالب أن يجيب عن ثلاثة أسئلة مقالية وثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد.

خطوات تساعدك على إجابة قطعة الفهم:

- 1 اقرأ الأسئلة أولاً قبل قراءة القطعة نفسها لأن هذا يعطيك فكرة عامة عن موضوع القطعة.
- 2 انتبه إلى ما تطلبه هذه الأسئلة من معلومات.
- 3 اقرأ القطعة كلها بتأن مرة ثانية قبل أن تقوم بالإجابة عن الأسئلة.
- 4 عندما تجد جملة فيها إجابة سؤال ضع خطاً تحتها وأيضاً إذا وجدت أرقام انتبه لها لأن واضح الامتحان عادة ما يسأل عنها.
- 5 إذا صادفت كلمة لا تعرف معناها حاول تخمين المعنى.

كيف تخمن معنى كلمة لا تعرف معناها

- 1 قد تتمكن من تخمين معنى كلمة بسبب وجود عبارة أو كلمة دالة على التناقض مثل :
ولكن **yet** - لكن **but** - في المقابل **in contrast** - على العكس من.../على خلاف **Unlike**
◀ مثال:

• Some people think that sports are **unimportant**, but I think they are **vital**.

- لو أنك لا تعرف معنى كلمة **vital**، يمكنك تخمين معناها حيث أن الجملة تقول «يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرياضة شيء غير مهم، لكنني أعتقد أنها». من خلال السياق نفهم أن **vital** عكس **unimportant** وبهذا يكون تخمين معنى الكلمة سهل وهو (ضروري) أو (مهم)

- 2 قد تخمن معنى الكلمة أيضاً من خلال البدايات أو النهايات المتعلقة بأصل الكلمة
◀ مثال: نفهم من خلال السابقة **im-** في كلمة **impossible** (التي تعني "غير" أو "ليس" أنها عكس **possible** فيكون معناها (غير ممكن/مستحيل)
◀ مثال آخر: نفهم من خلال اللاحقة **-less** في كلمة **homeless** التي تعني (بدون/بلا) أن معنى الكلمة (بلا مأوى/مشرّد)

- 3 يمكنك تخمين المعنى من سياق الجملة من خلال الكلمات التي تسبق الكلمة أو التي تليها .

◀ مثال:

• It rained hard through the night so the ground was **wet**.

- ماذا تعني كلمة **wet**؟ إذا كنت لا تعرف معناها بمقدورك تخمينه من خلال الجملة التي سبقتها "كانت السماء تمطر بغزارة خلال الليل لذلك الأرض.... لقد كانت تمطر بشده مما يعني أن الأرض لابد أن تكون (مبتلة) .

- 4 هناك طريقة بسيطة جداً: ترجم الجملة كلها واترك فراغ مكان الكلمة التي لا تعرفها ثم فكر أي كلمة باللغة العربية تتماشى مع معنى الجملة فمثلاً أنت قرأت جملة تقول :

• The work is **boring**. There is nothing I find interesting about it.

- حاول تخمين معنى "**boring**" هنا.

ما هي الأنماط الأكثر شيوعاً في أسئلة قطعة الفهم:

1 واضح الامتحان قد يضع خط تحت كلمة في جملة معينة في القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد يقول : الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى

• The underlined word '.....' refers to.....

2 قد يكون هناك في القطعة رأى / نصيحة ويسألك هل أنت موافق على هذا الرأى/ هذه النصيحة أم لا مع ذكر السبب:

• Do you agree with this opinion / advice in the passage? Why / Why not?

3 قد يرتبط موضوع القطعة بك فيسألك مثلاً : هل تحب أو هل تكره ؟ لم؟ ولم لا؟

• Do you like / dislike....? Why / Why not?

4 قد يطلب منك أن تعطى عنوان مناسب للقطعة أو تذكر الفكرة الرئيسية لها:

• Give a suitable title to the passage.

Model question

نموذج السؤال كما يأتي في الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

Read the following, then answer the questions:

I'm Hassan. My family lives in Alexandria, but my dad doesn't work in Egypt. He works in England. He went to the airport on Sunday evening and he caught the plane to England. He will come home next month. On Saturday, I don't go to school, and my brother doesn't go to school either. We play chess or go to the park. On Sunday mornings, we go swimming. My sister is three and she doesn't swim. She watches us. I hope to travel to England when I grow up. My father encourages me to do that.

A- Answer the following questions:

1- Where does Hassan's father work?

2- Give a suitable title for the passage.

3- Why do you think Hassan hopes to travel to England?

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The underlined pronoun "She" refers to

a Hassan b Hassan's father c Hassan's sister d Hassan's family

5- When do they go to the park?

a On Sunday b On Saturday c Every day d On Wednesday

6- The underlined words "grow up" means

a become older

b become younger

c plant trees

d get higher

Answer

1- He works in England.

2- Hassan's family.

3- To continue his studies there.

4- c. Hassan's sister

5- b. On Saturday

6- a. become older

3 Read and Correct the Under Lined Words:

- السؤال عبارة عن أربع جمل على القواعد اللغوية لكل جملة خطأ لغوي واحد.
- مطلوب من الطالب استبدال الكلمة الخطأ بصيغة صحيحة.

Mistake الخطأ

- I'd like any orange juice, please.
- Listen! She sings a beautiful song.
- Cairo is noisier than Al Fayoum.
- How much cups of coffee do you drink a day?
- Your house is small. Our is big.
- Didn't come late.

Correction التصحيح

- some
- is singing
- noisier
- many
- Ours
- Don't

4 Paragraph Writing

كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية

مطلوب من الطالب كتابة فقرة إنشائية مكونة من حوالى ثمانين (٨٠) كلمة عن أحد موضوعات الكتاب المدرسى.

• لابد أن يقرأ الطالب العنوان جيداً.

• حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن ندرس الآتى جيداً:

أولاً: ترتيب الجملة

فاعل	فعل	تكملة الجملة
Ahmed اسم شخص	go / goes / is going مضارع بسيط / مستمر	ظرف زمان - مكان / صفة / حال home / yesterday
school مكان	did / was doing ماضى بسيط / مستمر	happy / well
car شيء		

ثانياً: صيغ الجمل المختلفة

صفة + verb to be + فاعل

➔ My grandfather is kind.

وظيفة + verb to be + فاعل

➔ My father is a teacher.

مكان + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

➔ The laptop is on the table.

زمن + حرف جر + مفعول + فعل + فاعل

➔ We visited our grandparents on Friday.

مفعول + فعل + فاعل

➔ I have a mobile phone.

الساعة + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

➔ I wake up at 9 o'clock.



تعليمات مهمة للطلاب بخصوص الشكل العام للفقرة الإنشائية (paragraph)

- 1 نترك مسافة صغيرة (تعاادل كلمة صغيرة) في أول سطر فقط.
- 2 ابدأ أول كل جملة بحرف كبير (capital letter) واضح، وضع نقطة (full stop) واضحة في نهاية كل جملة، اكتب بخط واضح - الجملة بجوار الجملة - واطرِك مسافة بين الكلمة والأخرى.
- 3 استخدم زمن المضارع البسيط (v / v + s, es, ies) عند الحديث عن الحقائق والعادات، وزمن الماضي البسيط (v + d / ed / ied) عند الحديث عن موضوع في الماضي، وزمن المستقبل (will + inf.) عند الحديث عن موضوع في المستقبل.
- 4 يمكن أن يكون عنوان الموضوع جملة تستخدم كأحد الجمل في الكتابة.

Model question

نموذج السؤال كما يأتي في الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

Your family

My name is Habib(a) and this is my family. This is my sister. Her name is Radwa. She is two years old. She's very beautiful. Nawal and Ayman are our parents. Our mother is a doctor. Our father is a teacher. We have one cousin, Arwa. Her parents are my uncle and aunt. Their names are Magdy and Donia. We always visit them. They visit us, too. They're very kind. They always get me presents. I like them very much. My family is wonderful.

Common writing mistakes

أخطاء شائعة في الكتابة باللغة الانجليزية

هذه أمثلة من الأخطاء التي قد يقع فيها كثير من الطلاب

1) Definite and indefinite articles (a, an and the)

1) نستخدم (a - an) عندما نتحدث عن شيء للمرة الأولى في الجملة.

- I go to the school, close to the sports club.
- I go to a school, close to a sports club.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

2) نستخدم (the) عند التحدث عن شيء سبق ذكره.

- I stayed in a hotel near the station. A hotel was very nice.
- I stayed in a hotel near the station. The hotel was very nice.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

3) نستخدم (the) عند الإشارة إلى شيء معروف للجميع.

- Do you know an answer to a question?
- Do you know an answer to the teacher's question?

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

4) لا نستخدم أدوات عندما نتحدث بشكل عام باستخدام صيغة الجمع مع الاسم الذي يُعد، أو صيغة المفرد مع الاسم الذي لا يُعد.

- The oranges give us vitamins.
- Oranges give us vitamins.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

5) يجب أن توضع (the) أمام أسماء الدول المركبة:

- I live in United States.
- I live in the United States.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

2) Punctuation

أمثلة من أخطاء الترقيم التي قد يقع فيها كثير من الطلاب:

1) نستخدم الحرف الكبير (Capital letter) في الكتابة في الحالات الآتية:

- الضمير (I) في أي مكان في الجملة.

- i go to school early.
- I go to school early.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

- الحرف الأول من الكلمة الأولى في الجملة الخبرية أو السؤال.

- my brother came back from school at 3 p.m, but i came back at 2 p.m.

الجملة خطأ X

- My brother came back from school at 3 p.m, but I came back at 2 p.m.

الجملة صحيحة ✓

Writing skills

- الحروف الأولى من أسماء الأشخاص والدول والمدن والمعالم والأماكن الشهيرة والجنسيات واللغات والاختصارات والألقاب والعناوين وأيام الأسبوع والشهور والمؤسسات والمهرجانات.

- maged did his Homework and watched tv.
- Maged did his homework and watched TV.
- i can speak english and french well.
- I can speak English and French well.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

② توضع النقطة Full stop (.) في نهاية الجملة الخبرية والأمرية.

③ توضع الفاصلة Comma (,) لتعبر عن توقفات موجزة في الجمل وبين كلمات في قائمة وبعد No/ Yes

ولا نترك مسافة قبل الفواصل عموماً.

- After I ate I went to sleep
- After I ate, I went to sleep.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

④ توضع الفاصلة العليا Apostrophe (') قبل (s) الملكية للاسم المفرد، بينما نضع (s) للملكية للجمع المنتهي بـ (s):

- We met at Ali party.
- We met at Ali's party.
- These are the boys toys.
- These are the boys' toys.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

- توضع الفاصلة العليا في الاختصارات مثل: let's - don't - it's ... etc

- I dont have a car.
- I don't have a car.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

⑤ توضع علامة الاستفهام Question mark (?) في نهاية السؤال.

- Do you have a car
- Do you have a car?

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

⑥ توضع علامة التعجب Exclamation mark (!) في نهاية الجملة الخبرية مثل النقطة لإظهار الدهشة والتعجب.

- what a pity
- What a pity!

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

③ Common grammatical mistakes

① للتعبير عن شيء يحدث باستمرار في حياتنا نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر كما نفعّل في اللغة العربية:

- I'm often going to the club on Fridays.
- I often go to the club on Fridays.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

② إحرص على وضع ظروف التكرار (Adverbs of frequency) في مكانها (قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد فعل be):

always - usually - often - sometimes - never ...

- I go usually to the cinema on holidays.
- I usually go to the cinema on holidays.
- He always is early for school.
- He is always early for school.

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

الجملة خطأ X

الجملة صحيحة ✓

③ يأتي دائماً بعد حروف الجر فعل مضافاً له (ing):

- I thanked Ali for help me.
- I thanked Ali for helping me.

✗ الجملة خطأ

✓ الجملة صحيحة

④ بعض الأفعال لا يأتي بعدها حرف جر مثل (enjoy) حيث أن معناه يستمتع بـ:

- I enjoyed by the film.
- I enjoyed the film.

✗ الجملة خطأ

✓ الجملة صحيحة

⑤ تذكر أن بعض الكلمات مثل (information / news / equipment) يأتي بعدهم فعل لفاعل مفرد:

- The information you gave me were important.
- The information you gave me was important.

✗ الجملة خطأ

✓ الجملة صحيحة

⑥ الأفعال الناقصة لا يأتي بعدها (to):

- We must to eat healthy food.
- We must eat healthy food.

✗ الجملة خطأ

✓ الجملة صحيحة

⑦ لا نستخدم (that) بعد (should / must):

- You should that study your lessons.
- You should study your lessons.

✗ الجملة خطأ

✓ الجملة صحيحة

⑧ عليك أن تفرق بين استخدام (It's / Its):

• It's = (It is + n / adj / V-ing)

- It's (It is) my book.
- It's (It is) good to be fit.
- It's (It is) raining now.

• Its ضمير ملكية لغير العاقل

- I have a nice cat. Its tail is long.

⑨ عليك أن تميز في الاستخدام بين ضمائر الفاعل وضمائر المفعول:

- Samir and me revised for the exam.
- Samir and I revised for the exam.

✗ الجملة خطأ

✓ الجملة صحيحة

1 This is a fact file of some students. Look and make sentences:

1 Name : Basel
Age : 12
Likes : football
Favourite food : fish with rice

2 Name : Fatma
Age : 13
Likes : books
Favourite food : chicken

3 Name : Maher and Hany
Age : 12
Likes : tennis
Favourite food : ice cream

4 Name :
Age :
Likes :
Favourite food :

1. His name is Basel. He is twelve. He likes football. His favourite food is fish with rice.

2.

3.

2 Complete fact file 4 for you and write sentences like those in Exercise 1:

4.

3 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر التمارين



1. The bag is

a new

b Injy's

c Lama's

d Lama's sister's

2. The pencil case is

a red

b blue

c yellow

d green

3. Lama has got

a a book about sport

b a toy animal

c an English book

d a book about animals

4. She has also got

a some oranges

b an orange

c an apple

d a ball

5. The girls are in

a a school

b a house

c a park

d a shop

4 Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences:

1. Hatem don't like sports. **Hatem doesn't like sports.**

2. I want play tennis this afternoon.

3. Look! Those children jumping very high.

4. I visit my cousins yesterday.

5. You speak English very good.

5 Read the text, then answer the questions:

Mr Taha is a teacher in Port Said. He teaches English. On Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, he makes himself a sandwich for lunch. He eats it in the school. On Thursday and Friday, he usually walks home. His wife makes him his favourite lunch: chicken and potatoes. Yesterday, it rained a lot. The weather is sometimes rainy in Port Said. Mr Taha did not want to walk home, so he went to a restaurant near the school. He loves the food there. The cook makes it all himself.

1. Where does Mr Taha work?

He works in Port Said.

2. What does he usually eat for lunch?

3. What does he usually do twice a week?

4. Why did Mr Taha not want to walk home yesterday?

5. Is the weather always rainy in Port Said?

6. Who makes the food in the restaurant?

7. What does the underlined word there refer to?

6 Do these words have the same sound. Listen and put (✓) or (X):

1. ☐ washed / talked

2. ☐ called / waited

3. ☐ blue / duck

4. ☐ cake / home

5. ☐ shop / chick

6. ☐ father / brother

7. ☐ candy / July

8. ☐ tail / gate

7 What did they do at the weekend? Look at the table and answer the questions:

	Friday	Saturday
Ashraf	play football	visit cousins
Yunis	bake a cake	work in his father's shop
Riham	visit friends	play tennis

1. Did Yunis play football on Friday?

No, he didn't. He baked a cake.

2. Did Ashraf work in his father's shop on Saturday?

3. What did Ashraf do on Friday?

4. Did Riham visit her cousins on Friday?

5. Where did Yunis go on Saturday?

6. What did Riham do on Saturday?

8 Write about your weekend. What do you usually do? What did you do yesterday?

Audioscript

استمع إلى النص



• Exercise 3

Injy : Hi, Lama. Is that a new bag?

Lama : Hi, Injy. No, it's my sister's bag.

Injy : It's big. What's in it?

Lama : This is my pencil case. It's red.

Injy : Is that your book?

Lama : Yes, it's very good. It's about animals.

Injy : Is that a ball in your bag?

Lama : No, it's an orange! I like oranges.

Injy : I prefer apples.

Lama : Is that your phone?

Injy : Yes, it is. Look! It's 10 o'clock. Time for our English class.

Module
1

Family
and friends



1
UNIT

My family and me

Objectives

Reading:

An interview with twin brothers; *Heldi*; a text about a gymnast

Writing:

A paragraph on hobbies; a description of a person in your family

Listening:

An interview with twins

Speaking:

Talking about your family; asking questions

Language:

Pronouns; present simple

Life Skills:

Self-management

Values:

Love of family

Issues:

Awareness of rights and duties; loyalty and belonging

SB / WB Answers

جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والتمرينات مع كتاب عملي لدراسة الكتاب



Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 2-5 WB pages 72-73

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في ملحق الكتاب.

Key Vocabulary

hobby
male
female
interview
chess

هواية
مذكر / ذكر
مؤنث / أنثى
مقابلة شخصية
لعبة الشطرنج

(do)

voluntary work
twins
band
drum

استمع إلى المفردات

عمل تطوعي
توائم
فرقة موسيقية
طبله

Family

dad = father
brother
grandfather
son
uncle
great-grandfather
cousin

أب
أخ
جد
ابن
عم - خال
الجد الأكبر

mum = mother
sister
grandmother
daughter
aunt
great-grandchildren
parent

أم
أخت
جدة
ابنة
عمة - خالة
أبناء الأحفاد
أحد الوالدين

Hobbies

go swimming
listen to music
watch a football match
play the drums

يذهب للسباحة
يستمتع للموسيقى
يشاهد مباراة كرة قدم
يعرف على الطبول

play basketball
play football
play chess

يلعب كرة السلة
يلعب كرة القدم
يلعب الشطرنج



Vocabulary

both
(be) aged
together
pop music
interviewer
radio*
musical instruments
favourite
different

كلًا من - كلاهما
يلبغ من العمر
معا
موسيقى البوب «موسيقى شعبية»
مذيع (راديو)
آلات موسيقية
مفضل
مختلف

great
today
diary
Which...?
What about...?
What kind of...?
call (ed)
clap (ped)

رائع / عظيم
اليوم
مفكرة يومية - يوميات
أي - أيهما...?
ماذا عن...?
ما نوع...?
يسمى / يتصل
يصفق

Expressions & Prepositions

do voluntary work
do hobbies
do a sport
read (someone) a story
work hard
That's true!
make (a) noise
for no money
proud of

يقوم بعمل تطوعي
يمارس هوايات
يمارس رياضة
يقرأ قصة...
يعمل بجد
هذا صحيح / حقيقي!
يحدث ضوضاء
بلا مقابل مادي
فخور بـ...

next to

tell... about

on Mondays

on TV / the radio

on Saturday evenings

help in

play with

arrive at

the same.. as

بجوار

يخبر... عن

في أيام الاثنين

في التلفاز / الراديو

في مساء أيام السبت

يساعد في

يلعب مع

يصل إلى مكان صغير

نفس.. مثل

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يوجد تجميع لأهم الأفعال غير المنتظمة في آخر الكتاب

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

meet

يقابل

met

met

win

يفوز

won

won

hit

يضرب

hit

hit

throw

يلقي - يرمى

threw

thrown

drive

يقود سيارة

drove

driven

Word

Meaning

Opposite

male

مذكر

female

مؤنث / أنثى

different

مختلف

unlike

the same

نفس الشيء



Definitions

aunt

عمة - خالة

your mother or father's sister

parent

أحد الوالدين

your mum or dad

grandmother

جدة

your mother or father's mother

grandfather

جد

your mother or father's father

brother

أخ

- your parent's son
- a boy or man with the same parents as you

sister

أخت

- your parent's daughter
- a girl or woman with the same parents as you

uncle	عم - خال	your mum or dad's brother	١- لعبة لوحية
cousin	ابن أواصلة (العم/العمة/الخال/الخالة)	your aunt or uncle's child	٢- آلات موسيقية
chess	لعبة الشطرنج	a board game ⁽¹⁾ for two people	٣- يضرب
twins	توائم	- brothers or sisters who are the same age - two children born at the same time	٤- عصا
voluntary work	عمل تطوعي	work you do for no money / without getting money	
band	فرقة موسيقية	a group of people singing and / or playing musical instruments ⁽²⁾ together	
drum	طبلة	a musical instrument you hit ⁽³⁾ with your hands or a stick ⁽⁴⁾	

Language Notes

1) call - (be) called

• call (v) ينادي / يتصل هاتفياً

Ex. I called the waiter and ordered lunch.

Ex. I called the police after the accident.

يمكن أن تأتي called بـ verb to be وتكون هنا صفة.

Ex. A girl called Heba got a prize.

• (be) called (v) يُسمى

Ex. This baby is called Tamer.

2) good - well

• good (adj) جيد (صفة)

Ex. They are good football players.

• well (adv) بطريقة جيدة (ظرف)

Ex. Our team played very well in the match.

3) diary - dairy

• diary مفكرة يومية / يوميات

Ex. I usually write things that happen to me in a diary.

• dairy منتجات ألبان

Ex. We buy milk at the dairy.

Ex. Dairy food is important for our bones and teeth.

4) in - on

يستخدم حرف الجر in مع الشهور والسنين وفترات النهار المحتوية على كلمة the
in May - in 2002 - in the morning

يستخدم حرف الجر on مع الأيام والتواريخ:

Ex. I play basketball Mondays.

Ex. Hassan was born on March 9th.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- He is really ill. We must a doctor.
a. call b. buy c. cool d. sell
- The new hotel in our town is a hotel.
a. well b. good c. badly d. nicely
- I wrote about my last trip in my
a. diary b. date c. dairy d. door
- A: When were you born? B: April 10th.
a. In b. At c. On d. For



Reading

SB Page (3)

استمع إلى النصوص



Hello! My name's Ali. I'm 13. This is a picture of my family.



My mum's name is Amira. She's a teacher⁽¹⁾. Next to⁽²⁾ her is my dad. His name is Adel. He's a teacher, too. Both my parents⁽³⁾ are teachers at my school. They have one daughter⁽⁴⁾ - she's my sister⁽⁵⁾, Lamia, and she's 9 years old. And they have two sons⁽⁶⁾ - me, and my brother, Khaled. He's 11.

Our grandmother^{(7)*} is 64 and she's called⁽⁸⁾ Huda. She's my mum's mother. My mum's father is our grandfather⁽⁹⁾ - he's called Omar. He's 65. Their daughter's called Judy. She's my mum's sister and she's my aunt⁽¹⁰⁾. My uncle's called Marwan. He is a doctor⁽¹¹⁾. Their son is called Tarek, and he's my cousin⁽¹²⁾. It's his birthday⁽¹³⁾ today - he's 3 years old.

- ١- معلمة
- ٢- بجوار
- ٣- الوالدان
- ٤- ابنة
- ٥- أخت
- ٦- إبنان
- ٧- جدة
- ٨- تسمى
- ٩- جد
- ١٠- خالة
- ١١- طبيب
- ١٢- ابن عم
- ١٣- يوم ميلاد

Say it correctly

- * radio (make) في هذه الكلمة ينطق مثل صوت (a) في كلمة (make)
- * grandmother لاحظ أن صوت (d) لا ينطق في هذه الكلمة

An interview⁽¹⁾ with twin brothers

Meet Hazem and Hatem. They are brothers and they are **both**⁽²⁾ aged 12. They have the same parents and the same birthday. They're **twins**⁽³⁾!

What are your hobbies⁽⁴⁾?

Hazem : I like sports. I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays. I **go swimming**⁽⁵⁾ on Tuesdays and I play football on Saturdays.

Hatem : And he watches **football matches**⁽⁶⁾ on TV on Saturday evenings. He loves football!

Hazem : I love football!

Hatem : I don't like football, but I like music. I play the **drums**⁽⁷⁾ and I listen to music.

Hazem : He plays the drums in a **band**⁽⁸⁾.

Do you have any hobbies that you both like?

Hazem : We play **chess**⁽⁹⁾ **together**⁽¹⁰⁾ on Saturdays. Hatem usually wins.

Hatem : Yes, that's **true**⁽¹¹⁾! And on Saturday afternoons we do **voluntary work**⁽¹²⁾.

What kind of voluntary work?

Hazem : We help in the children's hospital.

Hatem : We play games with the children and read them stories. It's **great**⁽¹³⁾!



١- مقابلة شخصية

٢- كلاهما

٣- توأم

٤- هوايات

٥- يذهب للسباحة

٦- مباريات كرة

القدم

٧- آلة الدرامز

(الطبول)

٨- فرقة موسيقية

٩- لعبة الشطرنج

١٠- معاً

١١- حقيقي

١٢- عمل تطوعي

١٣- عظيم/رائع

Audioscript

Interviewer : Can I ask you some more questions?

Hazem : Yes, of course.

Interviewer : Hazem, when do you play basketball?

Hazem : I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays.

Interviewer : And when do you play football?

Hazem : I play football on Saturdays and I watch football matches on the TV on Saturday evenings.

Interviewer : When do you go swimming?

Hazem : I go swimming on Tuesdays.

Interviewer : Wow, you are **busy**⁽¹⁾! Hatem, when do you play the drums?

Hatem : I play the drums on Mondays at home. And I play the drums in a band on Thursdays.

١- مشغول
٢- موسيقى البوب

Interviewer : What do you do on Tuesdays and Wednesdays?

Hatem : I listen to music. I like **pop music**⁽²⁾.

Interviewer : What do you do on Saturdays?

Hatem : I help my mother and I do voluntary work with Hazem. And on Sundays I play chess with Hazem or my dad.

Interviewer : Thank you both.

Hatem : You're welcome.

Hi! My name's Lara and this is my family. That's my brother. His name's Ayman. Lina and Hatem are our parents. We have one cousin, Khadeeja. Her parents are my uncle and aunt. Their names are Imad and Dina. What about you? What's your name?

Exercises on Vocabulary

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في ملحق الكتاب.

1 Complete the following dialogue:

An interview with Omar.

Interviewer : Can I ask you some questions?

Omar : ①

Interviewer : When do you play the drums?

Omar : ②

Interviewer : ③

Omar : I go swimming after school.

Interviewer : What do you do on Fridays?

Omar : ④ I like pop music.

Interviewer : Thanks for your time.

Omar : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- What is the name of Ali's and how old is he?
a. grandmother b. grandfather c. sister
- Your brother is your parent's
a. son b. sister c. uncle
- Our grandmother is 64 and she's Huda.
a. calling b. to call c. called
- My father and mother are my
a. grandchildren b. parents c. cousins
- Your uncle's son is your
a. sister b. brother c. cousin
- "..... work" is work you do for no money.
a. Voluntary b. Paid c. Hard
- Reading and chess are my favourite
a. hopes b. food c. meals
- Hani and Aly are They are brothers and aged 12.
a. double b. couple c. twins
- Your sister is your parent's
a. niece b. daughter c. cousin
- Your is your mum or dad's sister.
a. uncle b. grandmother c. grandfather
- is a game for two people on a square board.
a. Handball b. Football c. Chess

d. daughter

d. daughter

d. call

d. daughters

d. mother

d. Easy

d. hobbies

d. pairs

d. mother

d. aunt

d. Karate

SB

WB

SB

إدارة / سوهاج 2023

الشرقية / الحسنية 2023

سوهاج / طغيا 2023

القاهرة / المرح 2023

الأهرام الشريف / الدقهية 2022

سوهاج / طغيا 2023

القنيطرة / بنها 2021 WB

البحيرة / مدينة القصاص 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

- Ali plays the in his free time.
a. drums b. ducks c. diaries d. gums
- Hossam likes playing the piano in a
a. pond b. bank c. band d. sand
- Amr is shy. He always gets nervous before
a. classrooms b. interviews c. clubs d. trips
- We watched an interesting film TV yesterday.
a. at b. from c. on d. with

- Football, basketball and volleyball are
a. sports b. subjects c. tools d. cars
- My uncle is a famous doctor. I'm so proud him.
a. about b. from c. for d. of
- Don't noise, the baby is sleeping.
a. take b. give c. make d. have
- I knew about his daily activities when I read his
a. dairy b. daily c. dear d. diary

Language

Pronouns

الضمائر

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل (تأتي قبل الفعل)	Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول (تأتي بعد الفعل أو حرف الجر)	Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية (يأتي بعدها الاسم المملوك)	Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية (لا تأتي بعدها اسم)
I أنا	me	my -	mine ملكي
He هو (العاقل)	him	his -	his ملكه
She هي (العاقل)	her	her -	hers ملكها
It هو/هي (غير العاقل)	it	its -	- -
We نحن	us	our -	ours ملكنا
You أنت / أنتم	you	your -	yours ملكك / ملككم
They هم	them	their -	theirs ملكهم

Ex. She likes eating fruits. (ضمير فاعل)

Ex. That car is mine. (ضمير ملكية)

Ex. I saw him yesterday. (ضمير مفعول)

Ex. That is my car. (صفة ملكية)

Ex. My father is proud of me. (ضمير مفعول)

(ضمير ملكية)

Notes

١- ضمائر الفاعل (I - he - she - it - we - you - they) تأتي قبل الفعل.

٢- ضمائر المفعول (me - him - her - it - us - you - them) تأتي بعد الفعل أو حرف الجر.

٣- صفات الملكية (my - his - her - its - our - your - their) يأتي بعدها الاسم المملوك.

٤- ضمائر الملكية (mine - his - hers - ours - yours - theirs) لا يأتي بعدها اسم وتحل محل صفات الملكية والاسم المملوك.

Ex. I have this car. = It's my car. = It's mine.

Ex. We have this house. = It's our house. = It's ours.

هـ- لمن... Whose

Ex. Whose pen is this? نستخدم للاستفهام عن الملكية.

وللإجابة عن هذا السؤال يمكن أن نستخدم صفات وضمائر الملكية السابق شرحها:

Ex. This is my pen. (قلمي my pen)

Ex. This pen is mine. (ملكي mine)

ومن الممكن أن نستخدم (belong to) كما يلي:

اسم أو ضمير مفعول + (s) to + فاعل

Ex. This pen belongs to me.



their (they) صفة ملكية للضمير

there طرف بمعنى (هناك)

Ex. The children can't find their classroom.

Ex. Ali went there last week.

your (you) صفة ملكية للضمير

you're (you are) اختصار

Ex. Where can I find your bag?

Ex. You're (= You are) taller than Mona.

its (it) صفة ملكية للضمير

it's (it is) اختصار

Ex. I like your dog. Its hair is nice.

Ex. A: Where is my cat?

B: It's (= It is) there.

Exercises on Language

- يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في ملحق الكتاب.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. It's her car. often drives it.

a. Her b. Hers c. She d. Mine

WB

2. Throw the ball to, please. I am waiting.

a. I b. me c. my d. mine

WB

3. Clap for the football players; played very well.

a. they b. their c. them d. theirs

WB سوهاج / احمد 2022

Lessons 1 & 2

الكلمة / صيغة المفرد 2023

4. Your school is small, but is big.

a. their b. her c. my d. mine

الكلمة / صيغة المفرد 2021

5. brother is my friend.

a. You're b. Yours c. You d. Your

الكلمة / صيغة المفرد 2021

6. They aren't my shoes. are new.

a. Myself b. Me c. Mine d. My

الكلمة / صيغة المفرد 2021

7. This is Heba's dress. It's

a. hers b. she c. mine d. her

كلمة الشخ / الو تلب 2022

8. This book belongs to Ahmed. It is

a. he b. him c. hers d. his

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. new laptop is very expensive.

a. My b. Me c. I d. Mine

10. Hani and can swim easily.

a. their b. my c. I d. mine

11. That is your room, Ali. It's

a. yours b. you c. you're d. your

12. The cat drank milk.

a. it's b. it is c. its d. it

13. Did all the students take books?

a. they're b. their c. there d. them

14. Omnia lent me new camera.

a. her b. she c. his d. hers

15. Who gave this flower, Hala?

a. yours b. your c. you d. our

16. This book is not It's Soha's.

a. my b. yours c. they d. he

17. These pens are They bought them yesterday.

a. his b. hers c. their d. theirs

18. A: car is this? B: It's my father's.

a. Whose b. Who c. Where d. Why

19. This mobile belongs to Ahmed. It's
a. him b. he c. his d. hers
20. I borrowed Ali's car because was at the mechanic's.
a. my b. mine c. me d. I
21. Our neighbour's house is small. is big.
a. My b. Me c. Ours d. I
22. My house is bigger than house.
a. she b. her c. he d. him
23. They have a daughter. is called Mona.
a. She b. Her c. Hers d. He
24. Why didn't you clean room?
a. you're b. you c. yours d. your



2 Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB & Exams

1. Can me have my pen, please? **WB** (.....)
2. My brother found a blue pen. It wasn't his. It was my. **SB** (.....)
3. Who's book is this? **WB** (.....)
4. Mum always helps my do my homework. **WB** (.....)
5. That bag is me and this one is yours. **WB** (.....)
6. Mona and I visited ours grandparents. **WB** (.....)
7. Samy is me brother. **WB** (.....)

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. Laila likes hers mum. (.....)
9. The students didn't find they books. (.....)
10. What's you're name? (.....)
11. Ola likes all hers teachers. (.....)
12. Hossam invited our to his birthday party. (.....)
13. I couldn't buy the mobile because it's price was high. **WB** (.....)

Speaking

Talking about your family

الحديث عن عائلتك

- Ex. My parents **are** teachers. Ex. We **live** in Giza.
Ex. My brother **is** 13 years old. Ex. We **have** one cousin, Khadeeja.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



يوجد تمرينات إضافية للجواب الملز في ملحق الكتاب

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Amir is talking to Farid about his family.

- Amir : Hello, Farid.
Farid : Hello, Amir. ① ?
Amir : My father works in a hospital.
Farid : ② ?
Amir : He is a doctor.
Farid : What's your mother's job?
Amir : ③
Farid : What does she teach?
Amir : ④
Farid : Great! ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. These brothers are the same age. They're
a. sisters b. cousins c. twins d. friends
2. My favourite is playing chess.
a. hobby b. subject c. size d. colour
3. Maher voluntary work at a hospital.
a. makes b. does c. swims d. plays
4. I really like my She is 68 years old.
a. uncle b. brother c. grandfather d. grandmother
5. A drum is a musical
a. instrument b. interview c. diary d. band

Language

6. Samy and Ahmed are angry. They can't find bags.
a. they b. them c. their d. we
7. Ahmed has a new T-shirt. T-shirt is wonderful.
a. He b. Her c. Him d. His
8. Mr Ali is teacher of English this year.
a. us b. our c. yours d. we
9. These are Ahmed's books. They're
a. his b. our c. you d. he
10. My friends and went to the cinema yesterday.
a. me b. us c. I d. we

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. This book belongs to me. It's me. (..... الشرقى / الشرقى 2023)
2. This house belongs to us! It's his house. (..... وسط الإسكندرية 2021)
3. Who pen is this? (.....)
4. My car is bigger than your? (.....)
5. My father helped my brother and I. (.....)
6. What's you're opinion of the test? (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

SB

(الرجع إلى شرح كيفية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية في مقدمة الكتاب)

Your hobbies

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- Do you have any hobbies? What are they? - How often do you do them?
- Where do you do them? - Why do you like these hobbies?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I have three different hobbies.
- I like and
- I play on Mondays.
- I play in the club.
- makes my body strong.

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 6-8 WB pages 74-75

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في ملحق الكتاب.

Key Vocabulary

orphan	يتيم	city	مدينة (كبيرة)
adventure	مغامرة	mountain	جبل
attic	غرفة بأعلى المنزل/سندرة		

استمع إلى المفردات



Vocabulary

cheese	جبن	communicate (d)	يتواصل
beach	شاطئ	live (d)	يعيش
How long...?	كم مدة...؟	add (ed)	يضيف
top	قمة/أعلى الشيء	stay (ed)	يبقى/يقيم
in a city		in the mountain	
airport	مطار	goats	ماعز
park	متنزه	flower	زهرة
bank	بنك	birds	طيور
hospital	مستشفى	sheep	أغنام
shop	محل		

Countries and cities

Morocco	دولة المغرب	Oman	دولة عُمان
Egypt	مصر	Cairo	مدينة القاهرة
South Africa	دولة جنوب إفريقيا	Cape Town	مدينة كيب تاون (جنوب إفريقيا)
France	دولة فرنسا	Paris	مدينة باريس (فرنسا)
Switzerland	دولة سويسرا	Port Said	مدينة بورسعيد

Expressions & Prepositions

come home	يأتي للمنزل	at home	بالمنزل
catch a plane	يلحق بطائرة	look at	ينظر إلى
would like + to + inf.	يريد أن...	at the top of ...	في أعلى...
talk on the phone	يتحدث في الهاتف	at the end of ...	في نهاية...
make a video call	يقوم بعمل مكالمة فيديو	lots of	كثير من
have adventures	يمر بمغامرات	live in	يعيش في مكان
feel + صفة	يشعر بـ	live with	يعيش مع شخص
by bus	بالأوتوبيس	walk with	يمشي مع
away from...	بعيد عن...	communicate with	يتواصل مع

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
take	took	taken
think	thought	thought
sleep	slept	slept
fly	flew	flown
feel	felt	felt
drink	drank	drunk
catch	caught	caught

Word	Meaning	Opposite
right	على حق / صواب	wrong
sad	حزين	happy
young	صغير في السن	old
top	قمة	bottom

Definitions

goats	ماعز	- animals that are like sheep - mountain animals you can eat or get milk from
orphan	يتيم	a child with no mother or father
attic	غرفة بأعلى المنزل	a room at the top of a house
city	مدينة	a place with lots of houses, shops and people
adventure	مغامرة	an exciting activity

Language Notes

1 take

* take + time + to + inf. يستغرق (وقت) لـ

Ex. It takes a long time to go to school.

2 country - the country "countryside"

* country دولة/بلد/قطر

Ex. I love my country, Egypt, very much.

* The country "countryside" الريف

Ex. Life in the country is very quiet.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- It a long time to walk home.
a. takes b. gives c. does d. has
- Life in is comfortable.
a. country b. the country c. century d. circle

Audioscript

SB Page (7)

استمع إلى النص



Sami : My family lives in Cairo, but my dad works in Paris, France⁽¹⁾. He goes to the airport⁽²⁾ on Sundays and he catches a plane to Paris. It takes five hours to fly⁽³⁾ there. And then, he catches a plane home to Egypt on Thursday evening. He works very hard⁽⁴⁾.

On Saturdays we play football in the park and we play chess. I love my dad and I'm happy when he is at home.

Aya : My grandmother and grandfather live in South Africa⁽⁵⁾. They live next to the beach⁽⁶⁾ in Cape Town. They have a beautiful house. We go and visit them, but it's a long way. It takes twelve hours to fly there!

I talk to them on the phone but they don't have a computer so we can't make a video call⁽⁷⁾. I would like to see them every day but I can't.

- دولة فرنسا
- مطار
- يسافر جوا
- بجد
- دولة جنوب إفريقيا
- شاطئ
- مكالمة فيديو

Reading

SB Page (8)

Heidi: by Johanna Spyri



Heidi is the story of an orphan⁽¹⁾ girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland⁽²⁾. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains⁽³⁾ and he has lots of goats⁽⁴⁾. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic⁽⁵⁾ of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread⁽⁶⁾ and cheese.

Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy!

But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very sad⁽⁷⁾ to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats. Heidi has lots of adventures⁽⁸⁾ in the city.

- يتيمة
- سويسرا
- جبال
- ماعز
- غرفة أعلى المنزل
- خبز
- حزينة
- مغامرات

I am Hassan. My family lives in Alexandria, but my dad doesn't work in Egypt. He works in London. He goes to the airport on Sunday evenings and he catches a plane to England. He comes home on Thursday evenings. On Saturday, I don't go to school, and my father doesn't work. We play chess or we go to the park. On Sunday mornings, we go swimming. My brother is three and he doesn't swim. He watches us!

Videoscript

SB Page (6)

Narrator : Senet⁽¹⁾ is a very old Egyptian game. You can see it in this picture. It is about 3,000 years old.

Narrator : Look at these people at the Pharaonic Village⁽²⁾ museum in Cairo. They like senet, too.

Narrator : Today, people play a game like senet. It's called chess.

Narrator : Two people play chess. Each person has got white or black pieces⁽³⁾. It is not an easy game. Some people play it for six hours or more!

Narrator : Bassem Amin is an Egyptian chess player. He is from Tanta and he is very famous. He is very good at chess.

Narrator : Chess is a popular⁽⁴⁾ game in Egypt. There are many chess clubs and some children have chess lessons after school. They also play it at home with their parents.

Narrator : Do you play chess?



١- لعبة قديمة
٢- تشبه الشطرنج
٣- القرية الفرعونية
٤- قطع
٥- شعبي / محبوب

Exercises on Vocabulary

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في ملحق الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. A is a place with lots of houses and shops. **SB**
a. mountain b. forest c. city d. desert

2. are animals that are like sheep. **SB**
a. Dinosaurs b. Goats c. Parrots d. Monkeys

3. Heidi is a story of a/an girl. She has no mother or father. **سوفاج / طفها 2022**

a. happy b. careful c. cheerful d. orphan

4. A/An is a room at the top of a house. **2021 القصة / القصة**

a. stair b. attic c. kitchen d. hall

5. The opposite of "top" is **2023 القصة / القصة**

a. middle b. high c. big d. bottom

6. It twelve hours to fly to London. **2021 القصة / القصة**

a. takes b. makes c. gives d. talks

7. Salma is a video call now. **2022 القصة / القصة**

a. taking b. doing c. making d. eating

8. Last week, he had a lot of in Dream Park.

a. adventures b. stories c. animals d. mountains

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. The two men climbed a last week.

a. city b. river c. mountain d. well

10. Yasmin happy when she won the prize.

a. filled b. fell c. failed d. felt

11. He went so fast to the plane to London.

a. catch b. miss c. lose d. hold

12. Dolphins use sounds to with each other.

a. educate b. punctuate c. communicate d. transport

13. The opposite of "sad" is

a. unhappy b. heavy c. happy d. low

14. How is the River Nile?

a. high b. long c. many d. tall

15. When does your father come?

a. on home b. at home c. home d. to home

16. I would like some ice cream.

a. buy b. to buy c. buying d. to buying

Language

The present simple tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

Form (التركيب)

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع → + Inf. مصدر الفعل

He / She / It / اسم مفرد → + Inf. مصدر الفعل + s / es ies

Ex. I **play** football on Fridays.Ex. Hassan always **comes** late.

١- يضاف للفعل (es) إذا انتهى بـ (ss / ch / sh / o / x)

cross → cross**s** go → go**s**
 watch → watch**s** do → do**s**

٢- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ **y** + حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ونضيف (es):

carry → carries study → studies

٣- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ **y** + حرف متحرك تبقى (y) ونضيف (s)

play → plays buy → buys

هناك أفعال لها شكل خاص في زمن المضارع البسيط وتحفظ كما هي:

1 be يكون
 (I) am
 (He / She / It) is
 (We / You / They) are

2 have يمتلك
 (I / You / We / They) have
 (He / She / It) has

Negative (النفى)

• نفى الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط كما يلي:

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع → don't + Inf.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد → doesn't / Never + Inf.

Ex. I **don't like** bad people.Ex. She **doesn't watch** football matches.Ex. Omar **never comes** home late.

Usage (الاستخدام)

• يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن:

Ex. I **am** twelve. / He **lives** in Cairo.

١- حقائق (facts)

Ex. She **watches** TV at night.

٢- عادات (habits)

Ex. They usually **sleep** early.

٣- الأعمال المعتادة الروتينية (daily routines)

Keywords (الكلمات الدالة)

every (day - week - month - year) / always /
 usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / never

Ex. Hala **always gets up** at six o'clock.

١- يمكن أن نفى الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط بوضع كلمة (never) قبل الفعل دون تغيير فيه.

Ex. He **never goes** to school late.

٢- تذكر أن فعل (Be) يأتي دائماً قبل (never).

Ex. Dad **is never** late for work.

Question (السؤال)

• للسؤال بـ «هل...؟» في زمن المضارع البسيط نستخدم Do / Does كما يلي:

Do + I / you / we / they / اسم جمع + Inf...?

Does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + Inf?

Ex. Do you usually **watch** TV?

- Yes, I do.

- No, I don't.

Ex. Does he sometimes **listen** to music?

- Yes, he does.

- No, he doesn't.

• للسؤال بكلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة السابقة مع وضع كلمة الاستفهام في أول السؤال.

Ex. What do they **watch**?- They watch **films**.Ex. How many lessons does he **have**?- He has **eight** lessons.

Exercises on Language

- يهجد تمرينات إضافية للمهاجم الملزالي من ملحق الحناي

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams ●

SB

SB

- SB

 - I listen to music.
a. aren't b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't
 - I the drums.
a. plays b. playing c. is playing d. play
القاهرة / القاهرة 2023
 - It's very hot in summer.
a. never b. usually c. ever d. yet
المنصورة / المنصورة 2021
 - He swimming.
a. like b. likes c. liking d. to like
الإدارة الجديدة 2023
 - We go to school on Fridays.
a. never b. sometimes c. always d. often
الغربية / الغربية 2021
 - Shady usually up at 6:45.
a. get b. is getting c. getting d. gets
إدارة أسبوت 2022
 - My aunt always me text messages.
a. send b. sends c. to send d. sending
طنطا 2022
 - Where your father work?
a. is b. do c. does d. are
القاهرة / القاهرة 2022
 - What sport you like?
a. don't b. doesn't c. aren't d. not
قصر شبراخيت / القصر 2022
 - We football on Tuesdays.
a. play usually b. plays usually c. usually plays d. usually play

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. he go to school late?
a. Do b. Is c. Are d. Does
12. Amal is very good at English. She it every day.
a. study b. studies c. studying d. is studying
13. The school bus always near my house.
a. stops b. stop c. stopping d. is stopping
14. My daughter the drums very well.
a. playing b. play c. plays d. are playing

Lessons 3 & 4

15. We always swimming on Saturdays.
a. practise b. practises c. practised d. practising
16. They to work by bus every day.
a. going b. go c. goes d. are going
17. The twins now ten years old.
a. are b. is c. have d. has

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB & Exams •

1. **Do** he play football on Mondays? **SB** (.....)
2. I **play always** the drums. **المشروع 2022** (.....)
3. Hatem **don't** like sport. **أول اختبار / التمرين الأولي 2021** (.....)
4. They always **helps** their father. **سوق / اختبار 2021** (.....)
5. Mariam **don't** speak English. **فصل 2023** (.....)
6. My friend **comes usually** by bus. **التمرين / مراجعة 2023** (.....)

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. Are your father a teacher? (.....)
8. My cats doesn't sleep here. (.....)
9. What time does you get up? (.....)
10. Sameh usually study English at night. (.....)

General Exercises

on Lessons 3 & 4



– يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في ملحق الكتاب

① Complete the following dialogue:

Karam and Nady are talking about the story "Heidi".

Karam : What are you reading, Nady?

Nady :  _____

Karam : 2

Nady : It's called "Heidi"?

Karam : _____

Nady : It's about an orphan girl.

Karam : Is it an interesting story?

Nady : _____

Karam : Can I borrow it?

Nadu : 5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

- A / An has no mother or father.
a. orphan b. nephew c. uncle d. cousin
- We always put our old things in the at the top of the house.
a. living room b. dining room c. bathroom d. attic
- There is snow the top of that mountain.
a. in b. at c. to d. for
- The children had a/an in the forest. It was very dangerous.
a. class b. adventure c. happiness d. work
- Some people spend hours talking phones.
a. at b. to c. on d. for
- Mr. Hossam works in a place away his family.
a. for b. from c. to d. about
- Aswan and Cairo are big
a. countries b. streets c. cities d. lakes
- Everest is a very high
a. desert b. mountain c. river d. sky

Language

- Solma to school on Fridays.
a. never goes b. goes never c. never go d. go never
- He doesn't to music.
a. listens b. listened c. listen d. listening
- the children like playing chess?
a. Do b. Does c. Is d. Are
- Ola and Hani sister and brother.
a. is b. was c. are d. has
- How many cars do your family ?
a. has b. had c. to have d. have

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- Why do Emad come to school late every day? (.....)
- This shirt is expensive, it cost 500 pounds. (.....)
- Ihab doesn't plays chess. (.....)
- I aren't a teacher. I'm a doctor. (.....)
- Are your father a teacher? (.....)
- Soha watch TV every night. (.....)

الشرفية / الحسنية 2023

دوماط 2023

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 9-11 WB pages 76-78

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في ملحق الكتاب

Key Vocabulary

gymnast	لاعب جمباز	busy life	حياة مزدحمة بالعمل
gymnastics	رياضة الجمباز	achieve (d)	يحقق / ينجح
athlete*	لاعب رياضي	balance (d)	يوازن
the Olympics	الالعاب الاولمبية	train (ed)	يتدرب

استمع إلى المفردات



Vocabulary

athletics	الاعاب قوى	mathematics	الرياضيات
physics	مادة الفيزياء	nearby	قريب
studies	دراسات	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
healthy	صحي / بصحة جيدة	club	نادي
best friend	صديق مفضل	team	فريق
family tree	شجرة العائلة	top gymnast	أفضل لاعبة جمباز

Expressions & Prepositions

do gymnastics	يمارس رياضة الجمباز	in the evening	في المساء
study hard	يذاكر بجد	for five hours	لمدة خمس ساعات
achieve a dream	يحقق حلم	move to	ينتقل إلى
stay strong	يظل قوي	fish with rice	سمك مع الأرز

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يوجد تجميع لأهم الأفعال غير المنتظمة في ملحق الكتاب

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
find	وجد	found
lose	يخسر	lost
go	يذهب	gone
swim	يسبح	swum

Word	Meaning	Opposite
difficult	صعب	easy
strong	قوي	weak
busy	مزدحم / مشغول	free
healthy	صحي	unhealthy

Definitions

train	يتدرب	practise ⁽¹⁾ a sport	١- يمارس
busy	مشغول	spending a lot of time doing things	٢- مهارات
gymnast	لاعب جمباز	a person who does gymnastics	
gymnastics	لعبة الجمباز	a sport which has a lot of different skills ⁽²⁾ , such as jumping	

Language Notes

(1) gymnastics - physics - mathematics - athletics

بعض الكلمات التي تنتهي بـ ics مثل athletics / mathematics / gymnastics / physics تعامل كمفرد:

Ex. Gymnastics is a difficult sport, but it makes me happy.

(2) make يجعل

• make + مفعول + inf.

Ex. The teacher made Ali write the lesson again.

• make + مفعول + صفة

Ex. The good news made my brother happy.

(3) so that لكي

• so that + فاعل + فعل

يأتي بعد so that التكوين (can / will + inf.) إذا كان النصف الأول من الجملة مضارعاً ويأتي التكوين (could / would + inf.) إذا كان النصف الأول من الجملة ماضياً.

Ex. Habiba eats healthy food so that she can stay strong.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The sad film made the girl
a. cries b. crying c. cry d. to cry
- Ahmed trains hard so that he achieve his dream.
a. could b. would c. did d. can
- Physics a difficult school subject.
a. is b. are c. have d. were

Reading

SB Page (10)

Habiba Marzouk achieves⁽¹⁾ her dreams

Habiba Marzouk is a gymnast⁽²⁾. She is 18 and lives in Cairo with her family.

Habiba has a very busy⁽³⁾ life. She goes to school and she studies hard. In the evenings, she trains⁽⁴⁾ for five or six hours. She is a top gymnast⁽⁵⁾ in Africa and she wants to go to the Olympics⁽⁶⁾.



Habiba's family always helps her. She eats healthy⁽⁷⁾ food so that she can stay strong⁽⁸⁾. Gymnastics⁽⁹⁾ is a difficult sport, but it makes her happy.

Say it correctly

* athlete (eat) في هذه الكلمة مثل نطق كلمة (ete)

استمع إلى النصوص



- ١- تحقق
- ٢- لاعبة جمباز
- ٣- مشغول
- ٤- تتدرب
- ٥- أفضل لاعب جمباز
- ٦- الألعاب الأولمبية
- ٧- صحي
- ٨- قوي
- ٩- لعبة الجمباز

SB Page (11)

My name's Lamia. I'm nine years old. I live⁽¹⁾ in Aswan with my family. My parents⁽²⁾ are teachers. My brother Ali is 13 years old and Khaled is nine. Khaled goes swimming every Friday.

I listen to⁽³⁾ music with my brothers. Ali plays football at school and he watches football matches⁽⁴⁾ on TV. Khaled goes swimming every Friday. There is a swimming pool⁽⁵⁾ near⁽⁶⁾ our house. My best friend is called Aya. We play basketball at school, and we're both in the school team⁽⁷⁾. Our team is very good!

- ١- يعيش
- ٢- والدا
- ٣- يستمع إلى
- ٤- مباريات
- ٥- حمام سباحة
- ٦- بالقرب من
- ٧- فريق

SB Page (17)

My name is Omar. Nabila is my sister. She lives with me and my family in Damietta⁽¹⁾. Her favourite⁽²⁾ food is fish. I like cheese. We have the same⁽³⁾ hobbies. We like swimming! We go swimming on Saturday and Sunday. My sister plays chess⁽⁴⁾, too. I do not like chess. How old is Nabila? She is 12. That is the same as me. I am 12, too.



- ١- مدينة دمياط
- ٢- مفضل
- ٣- نفس الشيء
- ٤- لعبة الشطرنج

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

SB

- Habiba is a top She wants to go to the Olympics.
a. gymnast b. viewer c. teacher d. worker
- Athletes work hard to their studies, their sport and their friends and family.
a. break b. answer c. destroy d. balance
- Mathematics my favourite school subject.
a. are b. is c. were d. am
- Tarek's family will to a new house.
a. move b. build c. sell d. clean
- Athletes train hard to strong.
a. dream b. balance c. stay d. achieve
- Her dream is to go to the She is a gymnast.
a. Physics b. Olympics c. Mathematics d. Gymnastics
- is a difficult sport, but it makes your body strong.
a. Gymnastics b. Physics c. Mathematics d. Gymnast
- When you do exercise and eat well, you become
a. unhealthy b. healthy c. dirty d. ugly

Bit by Bit Exercises

- Ali very hard. He wants to get the first prize.
a. builds b. trains c. breaks d. sleeps
- Hassan does his best to his dreams.
a. break b. lose c. miss d. achieve
- The opposite of "free" is
a. fast b. careful c. busy d. sad
- A/An should have a strong body.
a. athlete b. writer c. singer d. scientist
- Hassan is the captain of our football
a. classroom b. player c. team d. sport
- Bassim Amin is a chess player.
a. bottom b. top c. tape d. button
- Eating vegetables and fruits makes you healthy.
a. to stay b. staying c. stay d. stayed

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في ملحق الكتاب

Speaking

Asking and answering questions about people

السؤال والاجابة عن الأشخاص
تذكر تكوين السؤال في زمن المضارع البسيط كما يلي:

① (كلمة إستفهام) → ② فعل مساعد / ناقص → ③ فاعل → ④ فعل رئيسي → ⑤ التكملة?

Question

يمكن استخدام الصيغة السابقة

لعمل أسئلة في زمن المضارع البسيط عن الأشخاص.

- What's his/her name?
- Where does he/she live?
- Do you listen to music?

Answer

تذكر استخدام زمن المضارع البسيط
في الإجابة عن الأسئلة السابقة

- His name is Alaa.
- He lives in Al-Haram.
- Yes, I do.

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في ملحق الكتاب.

1 Complete the following dialogue:

WB

Dalida is talking about her cousin.

Dalida : This is a photo of my cousin.

Reem : ①

Dalida : It's Fares.

Reem : ②

Dalida : He's 14 years old.

Reem : Where does he live?

Dalida : ③

Reem : Which food does he like?

Dalida : ④

Reem : Which sport does he like?

Dalida : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

WB

- Khaled goes swimming in a pool
a. by b. nearly c. nearby d. behind
- We should eat food to keep fit.
a. healthy b. bad c. cheap d. unhealthy

3. The classroom is There are 80 students.
a. free b. great c. busy d. balanced
4. You can't work all the time. You need to your life.
a. balance b. achieve c. make d. do
5. You need a strong body to do
a. gymnastics b. physics c. mathematics d. gymnast
6. I study five or six hours a day.
a. at b. on c. with d. for
7. There're many people in my family
a. leave b. tree c. flower d. land

Language

8. Where your friend Omar live?
a. do b. has c. does d. is
9. A: Do you study hard? B: Yes, I
a. did b. do c. does d. done
10. A: What your grandfather's name? B: His name is Rateb.
a. does b. has c. is d. are

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Where are you live? (.....)
2. My aunt live in Tanta. (.....)
3. Physics aren't my favourite subject. (.....)
4. Do Hanaa listen to music? (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

SB

A person in your family

(محب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Who is your favourite person? - What does he / she do?
- What does he / she do every day? - Why is he / she your favourite person?
- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- He / She is a/an
- He / She trains / works for
- He / She wants to be a/an
- I hope I will be like him / her.
- He / She eats healthy food to

Review

Vocabulary

twins	توأم	aunt	عمة - خالة	interview	مقابلة شخصية
sister	أخت	uncle	عم - خال	voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
grandmother	جدة	band	فرقة موسيقية	attic	غرفة بأعلى المنزل
daughter	ابنة	male	مذكر / ذكر	adventure	مغامرة
brother	أخ	female	مؤنث / أنثى	city	مدينة (كبيرة)
grandfather	جد	drum	طبل	mountain	جبل
son	ابن	chess	لعبة الشطرنج	busy life	حياة مزدحمة بالعمل
great-grandfather	الجد الأكبر	athlete	لاعب رياضي	the Olympics	الالعاب الاولمبية
dad = father	أب	orphan	يتيم	hobby	هواية
mum = mother	أم	gymnast	لاعب جمباز	achieve (d)	يحقق / ينجز
parent	أحد الوالدين	gymnastics	رياضة الجمباز	balance (d)	يوازن
cousin	ابن / ابنة (العم / العمة / الخال / الخالة)	great-grandchildren	أبناء الأحفاد	train (ed)	يتدرب

Hobbies

go swimming	يذهب للسباحة	watch a football match	يشاهد مباراة كرة قدم	play basketball	يلعب كرة السلة
listen to music	يستمتع للموسيقى	play the drums	يعزف على الطبول	play football	يلعب كرة القدم
				play chess	يلعب الشطرنج

Language

1 Possessive adjectives and pronouns

Possessive adjectives	my	his	her	its	our	your	their
صفات ملكية يتبعها اسم							
Possessive pronouns	mine	his	hers	-	ours	yours	theirs
ضمائر ملكية لا يتبعها اسم							

2 The present simple tense

Subject الفاعل	I / You / We / They / اسم جمع	He / She / It / اسم مفرد
Form	inf.	inf. + s / es / ies
Negative	don't + inf.	doesn't + inf.
Question	(كلمة استفهام) Do + فاعل + inf...?	(كلمة استفهام) Does + فاعل + inf...?
Keywords	every...../ always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / never	

Speaking

1 Talking about your family

الحديث عن عائلتك

استخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن عائلتك:

Ex. My uncle is a scientist.

Ex. I like pizza.

Ex. My sister is 10 years old.

Ex. I have two brothers.

2 Asking and answering questions about people

السؤال والاجابة عن الأشخاص

Question

- What's your name?
- Where does he/she live?
- Do you play chess?

Answer

- My name is Ahmed.
- He lives in Giza.
- Yes, I do.

General Exercises on Unit 1

1 Complete the following dialogue:

WB

Hana and Nadia are talking about hobbies.

Hana : Hello! Nadia.

Nadia : Hello! Hana.

Hana : ①

Nadia : ② I play tennis on Tuesdays.

Hana : ③

Nadia : In the club.

Hana : Who do you play with?

Nadia : ④

Hana : Do you have any other hobbies?

Nadia : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

WB

- A is very high.
a. river b. valley c. mountain d. cave
كهر التلح / دسوق 2023
- Your is your aunt or uncle's child.
a. son b. cousin c. grandfather d. brother
القاهرة / الشروق 2022
- Samar wants to join the school music
a. pond b. band c. hole d. dream
- This film is very exciting; it is full of
a. units b. orphans c. attics d. adventures
- We'd like to have fish rice for lunch.
a. about b. of c. with d. on
- I have a very life. I can't find enough time to meet my friends.
a. busy b. long c. free d. tall
- Ahmed is a tennis player. He wants to go to the Olympics one day.
a. bottom b. top c. high d. upper
- The asked the actor very good questions.
a. view b. interview c. review d. interviewer
- Mum never football matches on TV.
a. listens b. writes c. watches d. runs
- Hany loves basketball. He it every day.
a. does b. plays c. goes d. listens

WB

Language

- I don't to music.
a. listens b. listen c. listening d. listened
القاهرة / الخانكة 2023
- We stay at home on Fridays.
a. never b. ago c. ever d. yet
- Mona help in the house.
a. don't b. doesn't c. isn't d. hasn't
إدارة / سنجيد 2022
- The children took books from the teacher.
a. they b. mine c. theirs d. their
- That television is
a. our b. we c. ours d. us

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She's my mum. I'm hers son.

2. Tell me about yours family.

3. He never is late for school.

4. It is me book. It is mine.

5. A: Is there a mouse? B: Yes, there are.

6. We play games with the children and read they stories.

7. Every day, Fatima help with the housework.

8. Who's shoes are those?

9. Which car is your?

SB (.....)

SB (.....)

(.....) (البنات / اذنه) 2021

(.....) (خمس السبع / قيس) 2022

(.....) (القاهرة / الشاهي) 2023

(.....) (الاستاذة / الصوره) 2023

(.....)

(.....) (القانونية / طوط) 2021

(.....)

(.....)

WB

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

Your best friend

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الاسئلة الآتية كتابة المقرة الإنشائية:

- Do you have a friend? How old is he / she? - Where does he / she live?

- What are his / her hobbies? - What does he / she like / dislike?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I have - His / Her name is

- He/ She plays - He / She likes

- He/ She doesn't like

Paragraphs

فقرات الإنشائية عن موضوعات محددة بالوقت

1. My hobbies

(Lessons 1 & 2)

Everyone should have a hobby. I have two different hobbies. I like sports and drawing pictures. I play football and basketball. I watch football matches on TV. I watch basketball matches in the club. Sports make my body strong. Playing sports helps me study well. In my free time, I draw pictures. I draw faces. I put them in my room.

2. A person in my family

(Lessons 5 & 6)

I have a wonderful person in my family. It's my cousin Dina. She's a gymnast. Dina has a very busy life. She goes to school and studies hard. In the evenings, she trains for five or six hours. She wants to go to the Olympics one day. Dina's family always helps her. They are all proud of her.

3. My best friend (General Exercises)

My best friend is Tamer. He is the same age as me. He lives in the house next to mine. He plays football. It's his favourite hobby. Tamer is clever at school. He likes maths and English. He doesn't like history. The school is near our house. We walk together to school. We always spend the weekend at the club.

4. My family

(Al Azhar)

My name is Habib(a) and this is my family. This is my sister, her name is Radwa. She is two years old and she's very beautiful. Nawal and Ayman are our parents. Our mother is a doctor and our father is a teacher.

5. My usual week

(Test)

I usually get up at seven o'clock. I like sports. I play basketball on Tuesdays. I go swimming on Mondays. I play football on Sundays. I like watching football matches on TV on Saturdays. I like listening to music. I play the drums in a band. I sometimes do voluntary work. I like helping at the children's hospital. I play games with the children and read them stories. It's great!



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



- The speaker's family is
a young b big c fast d old
- The speaker's father is a
a doctor b teacher c student d pilot

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Zeinab : What does your father do?

Ashraaqat :

2- Salim :

Hamdy : My grandfather's name is Farid.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The opposite of "male" is
a famous b female c mail d fail
- What's father's job?
a yours b you're c you d your
- We had a/an in the desert last week.
a adventure b interview c hobby d attic
- I have many dreams to in the future.
a play b turn c achieve d train
- Ahmed never chess. He doesn't like it.
a play b plays c playing d to play
- What your mother's name?
a 's b 'd c 're d 've

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I'm Hossam. My family and I live in the city. My father works in a big company. He is a manager. He likes his job very much. My mother is a doctor. She works at a nearby hospital. My grandparents live in the countryside. They are old. I am very proud of them. My grandfather is a farmer. He always gets up early to work on his farm. My grandmother is a housewife. She is really kind.

A. Answer the following questions:

- Where does Hossam's father work?
- Why does Hossam's grandfather get up early?
- What do you think Hossam's grandfather does on his farm?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Hossam's helps sick people.
a father b mother c sister d grandfather
- Hossam is very of his grandparents.
a angry b careless c hungry d proud

E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

Your family

(محباب عنه قليل الاختيار)

الشرقية / ولدت صقر / الأزهر الشريف 2021

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الاسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| - How big is your family? | - What does your father do? |
| - Where does he work? | - What does your mother do? |
| - Where does she work? | - How many brothers and sisters do you have? |
- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| - I have family | - My father is |
| - He works | - My mother is |
| - She works | |



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- Hazem plays football on
a. Monday b. Sunday c. Tuesday d. Thursday
- Ali likes
a. basketball b. volleyball c. tennis d. football
- Ali plays the
a. violin b. drums c. piano d. guitar
- Hazem plays chess with his
a. parents b. grandparents c. friends d. teachers

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Youssef asks Hazem about his family.

Youssef : Hi, Hazem. Can I ask you about your family?

Hazem : 1

Youssef : 2

Hazem : My father is called Amgad.

Youssef : 3

Hazem : He's 39 years old.

Youssef : What does your mum do?

Hazem : 4 . She works in my school.

Youssef : Do you have any cousins?

Hazem : 5

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

WB

My name is Omar. Nabila is my sister. She lives with me and my family in Damietta. Her favourite food is fish. I like cheese. We have the same hobbies. We like swimming! We go swimming on Saturday and Sunday. My sister plays chess, too. I do not like chess. How old is Nabila? She is 12. That is the same as me. I am 12, too. We live happily with our parents. My father is a teacher. My mother is a teacher, too. They work at the same school. They walk to the school every day. It's near our house.

A. Answer the following questions:

- What do Nabila and Omar like?
- Who does Omar live with?
- When do Nabila and Omar go swimming?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Nabila likes fish but Omar likes
a. fish, too b. cheese c. chess d. basketball
- Nabila is Omar's sister.
a. cousin b. best friend c. twin d. uncle
- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
a. Omar and Nabila b. the family c. the schools d. the parents

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- You can get milk and cheese from a/an
a. elephant b. goat c. giraffe d. monkey
- A / An is always at the top of the house.
a. bathroom b. kitchen c. office d. attic
- A football is a game for 22 people.
a. match b. ball c. club d. player
- Our parents are proud of because we work hard at school.
a. my b. we c. I d. us
- Omnia never to work on time. She is always late.
a. come b. comes c. coming d. is coming

Unit 1 My family and me

6. Grandfather arrives at 5 o'clock. Let's go and meet
 a. her b. he c. him d. his
7. My father and mother are my
 a. grandchildren b. parents c. cousins d. daughters
8. Judy plays the guitar in the school music
 a. pond b. dream c. hole d. band
9. A person is always doing something dangerous.
 a. brave b. funny c. busy d. friendly
10. I like reading stories.
 a. interview b. adventure c. twin d. diary

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Does you play chess?
 2. The girls met there friends at the club.
 3. I can't find mine mobile anywhere.
 4. Sleem don't play tennis after school.

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

Your usual week

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What do you do every day? - What do you do in the evenings?
 - How often do you do sports? - How often do you do voluntary work?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I usually get up at o'clock - I play on and
 - I go swimming on - I like watching on TV.

prep
1

New Hello!

2
UNIT

It's my
favourite
subject

Objectives

Reading:

Descriptions of schools around the world

Writing:

A paragraph about your journey to school; A paragraph about your daily life

Listening:

A discussion about timetables

Speaking:

Asking and answering about school and timetables

Language:

Adverbs of frequency; possessive 's and s'

Life Skills:

Critical thinking; self-management

SB / WB Answers

جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والتدريبات معاجم عنها في آخر الكتاب

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 12-15 WB pages 79-80

Key Vocabulary

library	مكتبة (للقراءة واستعارة الكتب)	bell	جرس
playground	ملعب / فناء	hall	ردهة (قاعة كبيرة)
typical	نموذجي (معتاد)	PE (Physical Education)	التربية البدنية (الرياضة)
social studies	مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية	drama	مادة الفن المسرحي
art	مادة التربية الفنية (الرسم)	home economics	مادة الاقتصاد المنزلي
computer studies	مادة الحاسب الآلي	religion	مادة التربية الدينية
science	مادة العلوم		

Vocabulary

difference	اختلاف	road	طريق
timetable	جدول الحصص	trip	رحلة قصيرة
way	طريقة	flying	الطيران
quarter	رُبع	head teacher	ناظر المدرسة
half	نصف	What time....?	ما الوقت.....؟
finally	أخيراً	How often....?	كم عدد المرات.....؟
daily	يومي		

Expressions & Prepositions

have breakfast	يتناول طعام الإفطار	on a typical weekend	في عطلة نهاية اسبوع معتاد
get home	يصل للمنزل	on school days	في أيام الدراسة
do the homework	يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلي	at about ten	في حوالي الساعة العاشرة
It is time for.....	حان وقت.....	at break	في فترة الاستراحة
tell the time	يخبر عن الوقت	talk to / with	يتحدث إلى / مع
See you later.	أراك لاحقاً.	go to bed	يذهب للنوم
have a busy day	لديه يوم مزدحم بالعمل	on a Tuesday	في يوم من أيام الثلاثاء
good at	جيد في	far away	بعيد
around the world	حول العالم		

استمع إلى المفردات



Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present

	Past simple	Past Participle
see	saw	seen
ring	rang	rung
get up	got up	got up
tell	told	told

Word

Meaning

Opposite

usual	عادي	normal	unusual	غير عادي
busy	مزدحم / مشغول	crowded	free	حر - غير مشغول
start	يبدأ	begin	finish / end	ينتهي



Definitions

library	مكتبة	- a place where you can borrow ⁽¹⁾ or read books	1- يستعير
		- You can find a lot of books here	2- شيء
playground	ملعب - فناء	- a place outside where children at school can play	3- التمثيل
bell	جرس	- an object ⁽²⁾ that makes a noise when you ring it	4- الطهي
		- It rings when a lesson starts and finishes.	
hall	ردهة (قاعة كبيرة)	- a very big room for a lot of students and teachers	
		- a large room where people can meet together	
drama	مادة الفن المسرحي	- the subject of how to learn about acting ⁽³⁾	
home economics	مادة الاقتصاد المنزلي	- the subject for learning about cooking ⁽⁴⁾ and skills for the home	
typical	نموذجي (معتاد)	- usual	



Language Notes

1 drive - ride

• drive (v) يقود (سيارة أو أتوبيس)

• drive (someone) to يوصل (شخص) بالسيارة

Ex. I can drive a car.

Ex. I drove Sameh to school yesterday.

• ride (v) (a horse / a camel / a bike / a bus) يركب (حيواناً / دراجة / أتوبيس)

Ex. Mariam rode a camel.

2) trip - picnic

رحلة قصيرة (للاستمتاع أو لعرض معين) trip
Ex. We took a boat trip around the island.

نزهة خلوية (في الهواء الطلق) picnic
Ex. We had a picnic when the weather was nice.

3) by - in - on

نستخدم by - in - on مع وسائل المواصلات كما يلي:

أ- نستخدم by أمام كل وسائل المواصلات إذا لم يأتي بينهما فاصل.

by car - by train - by plane - by boat - by ship - by bus - by bike

لكننا نقول on foot بمعنى سيراً على الأقدام

ب- إذا جاء بينهما فاصل مثل (a / the) أو أي صفة ملكية أو (s) الملكية:

نستخدم in مع (car - taxi)

in (a / the) my car - in (a / the) taxi.

ونستخدم on مع باقي وسائل المواصلات.

on the bus - on the train - on a bike - on my horse - on Ahmed's bike

4) computer studies / social studies

- تذكر أن (computer studies / social studies) هي أسماء مواد دراسية وتعامل كمفرد ونفس الشيء مع home economics - mathematics - physics

Ex. Social studies is my favourite subject.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourists like to camels at the Giza Pyramids.
a. drive b. run c. ride d. walk
2. We had a in the park yesterday.
a. picnic b. trip c. flight d. voyage
3. A: How did you go to the cinema?
B: a taxi.
a. By b. In c. On d. At
4. A: What is your favourite school subject?
B: Social studies my favourite.
a. is b. are c. were d. have

Reading

SB Page (12)

Lessons 1 & 2

استمع إلى النصوص

- 1- قصة
- 2- بعد
- 3- مفضل
- 4- مادة دراسية
- 5- مادة الرياضيات
- 6- مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية
- 7- مادة العلوم



Do we have an English lesson⁽¹⁾ tomorrow?

Yes. It's after⁽²⁾ Arabic.



Thanks. What's your favourite⁽³⁾ subject⁽⁴⁾?

I like maths⁽⁵⁾. Tuesday is my favourite day because we have two maths lessons! 😊 What's your favourite subject?



Hmm 😐.. I think my favourite subjects are social studies⁽⁶⁾ and science⁽⁷⁾.

SB Page (14)

Daily⁽¹⁾ life around the world



"I'm Akeyo. I live in Nairobi⁽²⁾, in Kenya⁽³⁾. This is a typical⁽⁴⁾ day for me. On school days I get up⁽⁵⁾ at half past six. I usually have breakfast⁽⁶⁾ with my family. My school is far away⁽⁷⁾, so we never walk there. My mum and dad drive⁽⁸⁾ us there. It always takes a long time because the roads⁽⁹⁾ are busy⁽¹⁰⁾. When we hear the bell⁽¹¹⁾ at eight o'clock, we go to the school hall⁽¹²⁾. We have four lessons, then it is break. I usually talk with my friends in the playground⁽¹³⁾, but sometimes we go to the library⁽¹⁴⁾ to read books. After break, we have more lessons. We have lunch⁽¹⁵⁾ at half past twelve. School finishes at four o'clock. When I get home⁽¹⁶⁾, I have something to eat, then I always do my homework. My brother and I usually watch TV before we go to bed at about half past eight. I have a busy day!"

- 1- يومي
- 2- مدينة نيروبي
- 3- دولة كينيا
- 4- معتاد
- 5- يستيقظ
- 6- الإفطار
- 7- بعيدة
- 8- يوصل بالسيارة
- 9- الطرق
- 10- مزدحم
- 11- جرس
- 12- ردهة
- 13- ملعب - فناء
- 14- مكتبة
- 15- الغداء
- 16- يصل للمنزل

Audioscript

SB Page (13)

- Ahmed:** I like the new timetable. What's your favourite day, Inji?
- Inji:** I like Thursday. We have social studies first on Thursday. Then we have English and then we go to science. That's my favourite subject.
- Ahmed:** My favourite day's today. We have maths first and second lesson after break today. I love maths! Then we have science and art.
- Inji:** I like art too, but I'm not very good at it. What do we have tomorrow?
- Ahmed:** English, then science is next, then Arabic and then home economics. After break, we have social studies. Then we have science and computer studies. Finally, we have music.
- Inji:** When do we have drama?
- Ahmed:** That's the last two lessons on a Tuesday and the last lesson Wednesday. It's time for the next lesson now! See you later!

- ١- جدول الحصص
٢- فترة استراحة
٣- التربية الفنية
٤- التربية الدينية
٥- الاقتصاد المنزلي
٦- مادة الحاسب الآلي
٧- التربية الموسيقية
٨- مادة الفن المسرحي

SB Page (13)

- 1 A quarter past ten / Ten fifteen 4 Twenty-five past seven / Seven twenty-five
2 Half past twelve 5 Five to twelve / Eleven fifty-five
3 Half past five 6 A quarter to nine / Eight forty-five

Say it correctly

• quarter

مثل نطق الجزء الملون من كلمة four

ينطق الجزء الملون

Videoscript

SB Page (14)

In Africa, America, Asia, and Europe most children between the ages of four and eighteen go to school. They often study subjects such as maths, Arabic and English. Students study in the morning and sometimes in the afternoon, too. Some children go to school from Sunday to Thursday. Other children go to school from Monday to Friday. When they finish school, some students choose to go to university. Some of the most important universities in Africa and the Arab region are in Egypt. There is the Al-Azhar University. This is one of the oldest universities in the world. And there is Cairo University in Giza. Here, people study subjects like art, science and computer studies. Do you want to go to university? Which subjects do you want to study at university?

- ١- قارة آسيا
٢- جامعة
٣- المنطقة العربية
٤- جامعة الأزهر

Exercises on Vocabulary

Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is talking to Ayman.

Ahmed: Can I ask you some questions?

Ayman: 1

Ahmed: 2

Ayman: I'm twelve years old.

Ahmed: 3

Ayman: I live in Tanta.

Ahmed: How do you go to school?

Ayman: 4

Ahmed: What's your favourite subject?

Ayman: 5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. In a school, students play games in a
a. playground b. theatre c. museum d. library
2. For homework, we often read books from the
a. street b. house c. playground d. library
3. I can hear the It's time for the English lesson.
a. hall b. ball c. bell d. radio
4. My brother is good at He likes numbers.
a. maths b. sports c. social studies d. languages
5. A is a very big room for a lot of students and teachers.
a. hole b. hall c. hill d. wall
6. Heba learned how to cook in the lesson.
a. music b. art c. home economics d. Arabic

7. _____ and science are school subjects.
 a. Social studies b. Timetables c. Trips d. Bells
8. On a _____ weekend, I visit my grandmother.
 a. famous b. careful c. helpful d. typical

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. Most Egyptians have _____ on Sham El-Nessim.
 a. studies b. picnics c. flights d. roads
10. Mustafa likes to draw and paint during the _____ lessons.
 a. music b. science c. drama d. art
11. How long is the _____ at Amal and Injy's school?
 a. ruler b. world c. break d. student
12. We have our _____ lessons at the laboratory (المعمل) next to class 2A.
 a. science b. maths c. Arabic d. drama
13. _____ is the main language of Arab people.
 a. French b. Spanish c. English d. Arabic
14. A: When do you _____ home, Ahmed? B: At 3 p.m.
 a. build b. get c. break d. take
15. It always takes a long time to go to school because the roads are _____ here.
 a. empty b. clean c. careful d. busy
16. The opposite of "usual" is _____.
 a. normal b. real c. unusual d. typical
17. I usually go to my uncle's farm to _____ donkeys.
 a. ride b. fly c. drive d. lead
18. We learnt how to pray صلى الله عليه وسلم in the _____ lesson.
 a. maths b. religion c. English d. drama
19. An old man asked me to _____ him the time.
 a. tell b. talk c. speak d. say
20. "Busy" gives the meaning of "_____".
 a. free b. crowded c. paid d. ugly
21. Home economics _____ an important subject.
 a. is b. are c. have d. were

إدارة الصفحات 2022

WB



Language

Adverbs of frequency

ظروف التكرار



- Ex. We **usually** play tennis. تأتي ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي.
- Ex. He **is never** late for school. وبعد فعل يكون (Verb to be)
- للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث شيء في المضارع البسيط نستخدم:

How often + do / does + فاعل + inf....? كم مرة يحدث.....؟

Ex. How often do you get up at 6.30 am?

للرد نستخدم: فاعل + adverb of frequency + verb

Ex. I **never** get up at 6.30 am! I **usually** get up at 7 am.

Exercises on Language

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. The sun _____ comes up in the west.
 a. always b. often c. sometimes d. never
2. We _____ go to the beach in winter. It's too cold there.
 a. always b. never c. usually d. sometimes
3. Do you _____ on Fridays?
 a. often travels b. travel often c. often travel d. travels often

الأزهر الشريف / الدفعية 2020

WB

الغربية / شبين القناطر 2020

4. I don't to music.
a. listens b. listen c. listening d. listened
5. Rahma travels to Alexandria by train.
a. isn't b. doesn't c. never d. don't
6. It is very hot in the summer.
a. never b. not c. hardly d. usually
7. Hanan always gets the full mark in English. She makes mistakes.
a. never b. usually c. sometimes d. often

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. I late on Sundays.
a. get up usually b. usually gets up
c. get usually up d. usually get up
9. Hassan is a clever boy. He does his homework.
a. never b. not c. sometimes d. always
10. Mazen is a good boy. He shouts at his mother.
a. always b. never c. usually d. often
11. How do the children go to the park?
a. always b. usually c. never d. often
12. We speak in English during the English classes.
a. usually b. no c. not d. doesn't
13. Shahd to people she doesn't know.
a. talks never b. never talks c. talks often d. talks always
14. Mustafa acts well. He trains in the drama lessons.
a. always b. never c. however d. although
15. Omar is a good student. He late for his school.
a. is never b. never is c. is always d. always is
16. A: How do you go to the library? B: Twice a week.
a. often b. sometimes c. never d. usually

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB & Exams

1. He goes always to work by car. (.....) 2023
2. Mariam likes English, so she never reads English stories. (.....) 2023
3. Reham sleep always early. (.....) 2023

Lessons 1 & 2

4. Amir drinks often milk before he goes to bed. (.....)
5. I like fish very much, so I never eat it. (.....)
6. Mr Muhammad always is active. (.....)

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. Do you clean usually your room? (.....)
8. Mr Waleed always travels by bus. He likes travelling by train. (.....)
9. I go sometimes running in the morning. (.....)
10. Polite boys are usually rude. (.....)
11. A: How long do you play computer games? B: Once a week. (.....)

Speaking

Asking about the time

السؤال عن الوقت

• للسؤال عن وقت حدوث شيء نستخدم أحد الأساليب الآتية:

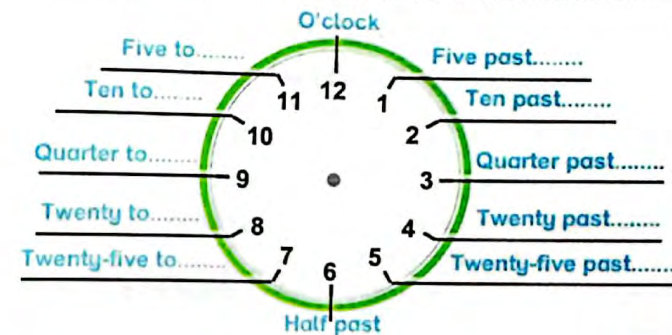
What time + do/ does + فاعل + فعل.....? متى.....؟

Ex. What time does science start on Sunday?

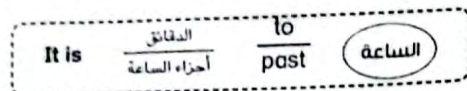
What time is + فاعل? متى تكون.....؟

Ex. What time is the break?

الرد Response



تستخدم (past) للتعبير عن الوقت بمعنى (و) وتستخدم (to) للتعبير عن الوقت بمعنى (إلى) كما يلي:



09:15 = It is quarter past nine.

كما يمكن قراءة رقم الساعة ثم عدد الدقائق:

Ex. It is nine fifteen.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Saad are talking about their school.

Saad : Hi Ahmed.

Ahmed : Hi Saad. Have we got English tomorrow?

Saad : ① It's the first lesson.

Ahmed : ② ?

Saad : We usually read English books on Sundays.

Ahmed : What subjects have we got after English?

Saad : ③ ?

Ahmed : ④ ?

Saad : The break is at 11: 00 o'clock.

Ahmed : OK! ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. A: Are you at science? B: Yes, I'm not bad at it. 2021
a. good b. bad c. sad d. hot

2. My brother likes drawing, so his favourite subject is 2023
a. music b. science c. religion d. art

3. We can borrow and read books at the 2023
a. library b. laboratory c. playground d. theatre

4. At break, I play sports in the 2023
a. bell b. library c. hall d. playground

5. All the children in our school go to the when the head teacher wants to talk to us. WB
a. cave b. hall c. house d. zoo

Lessons 1 & 2

6. A rings when a break starts or finishes.
a. bell b. ball c. hall d. bill
7. Students learn about different countries in lessons.
a. science b. maths c. social studies d. art
8. It's half seven.
a. past b. of c. to d. too

Language

9. Mona always short stories.
a. read b. reading c. reads d. is reading
10. Ziad likes films. He goes to the cinema.
a. doesn't b. always c. never d. not
11. Nada is helpful at home; she's very lazy.
a. never b. usually c. always d. every

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She goes always running in the morning. (.....)
2. Clever students always fail exams. (.....)
3. My teacher never is rude to me. (.....)
4. How many do you watch TV? (.....)
5. I usual clean my room. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

Your day

(امضات غنية في آخر الوحدة)

- What do you usually do every day?

- What do you always do?

- What time do you do this?

- What do you never do?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I usually

- I often at o'clock.

- I always

- I never

- I go to

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 16-18 WB pages 81-82

Key Vocabulary

transport	النقل والمواصلات	bike
canoe	قارب صغير خفيف	motorbike
snowmobile	زحافة جليد	cycle (d)

استمع إلى المفردات
دراجة (هوائية)
دراجة نارية (موتوسايل)
يقود دراجة

Vocabulary

form	شكل	important	هام
village	قرية	office	مكتب
snow	جليد	pencil case	مقلمة
towel	منشفة (قوطة)	How long....?	كم طول (المدة الزمنية)...
fun	ممتع	notebook	دفتر/كراس
dangerous	خطير	school rules	قواعد مدرسية
outside	بالخارج	again	مرة أخرى
quick	سريع	rain (ed) (n)	تمطر - مطر

Expressions & Prepositions

take a journey	يقوم برحلة طويلة	travel to	يسافر إلى
take to school	يأخذ إلى المدرسة	go in a canoe	يذهب في قارب
follow the rules	يتبع القواعد	on a snowmobile	على زحافة جليد
wear the school uniform	يرتدي الزي المدرسي	on time	في الوقت المحدد
help each other	يساعد بعضنا البعض	on the right	على اليمين
say unkind things	يقول أشياء غير مهذبة	on the other side	على الجانب الآخر
live a long way from	يعيش على مسافة بعيدة من	cycle to school	يركب دراجة إلى المدرسة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn

Word

Meaning

Opposite

safe	امن	secured	dangerous	خطير
cheap	رخيص	inexpensive	expensive	غالي
unkind	قاسي	cruel	kind	لطيف

Definitions

canoe	قارب صغير خفيف	a small, narrow ⁽¹⁾ boat for one or two people	1- ضيق
snowmobile	زحافة جليد	a vehicle ⁽²⁾ that you can drive on snow	2- مركبة
cycle	يقود دراجة	ride a bicycle	

Language Notes

1 shoes - trousers - shorts - glasses

تعامل هذه الكلمات كجمع:

Ex. My new shoes are expensive. I bought them last week.

Ex. Whose glasses are these?

لاحظ أننا عندما نقول (a pair of.....) مع الكلمات السابقة، يتبعها فاعل مفرد:

Ex. My new pair of trousers is expensive. I bought it last week.

2 arrive in - arrive at - get to

arrive يصل (بدون حرف جر)

Ex. When are they arriving?

arrive at يصل إلى مكان صغير «مدرسة - مستشفى...»

Ex. I arrive at school early.

arrive in يصل إلى مكان كبير «دولة - مدينة...»

Ex. When does the plane arrive in London?

get to يصل إلى «مكان كبير أو صغير»

Ex. He got to Cairo / the hospital early.

لاحظ أنه عند استخدام الأفعال السابقة مع كلمات (home / there) لا نستخدم حرف جر:

Ex. He got home at 6.

Ex. When did you arrive there?

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: How much do these trousers cost?
B: cost me L.E 300.
a. It b. They c. He d. She
2. We arrived at 6 o'clock.
a. at home b. in home c. home d. for home
3. The king arrived France last week.
a. in b. at c. for d. with
4. He arrived Alexandria Airport to meet his cousin.
a. in b. on c. to d. at

الفلوبية / طوخ 2021

Reading

SB Page (18)

How do they go to school?

In some countries, children live a long way from their school. They do not go to school by car, bus or train.

1- Every morning, children from this village in Egypt **cycle** to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel. They can always arrive **on time**.



2- These children live next to **Lake Bunyonyi** in **Uganda**. Their school is on the other side of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a **canoe**. The canoe takes the children to school and home **again** every day.



3- This boy lives in the **USA**. In winter, there is a lot of **snow**. The children travel to school on a **snowmobile**!

استمع إلى الصوت



- ١- قطار
- ٢- يركب دراجة
- ٣- في الوقت المحدد
- ٤- بحيرة بانبيولي
- ٥- دولة اوغندا
- ٦- قارب صغير
- ٧- خفيف
- ٨- مرة أخرى
- ٩- الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
- ١٠- جليد
- ١١- زحافة جليد

Say it correctly

- Uganda ينطق صوت (u) في هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (u) في كلمة (uniform)
- snowmobile ينطق صوت (i) في هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (i) في كلمة (file)

Audioscript

SB Page (18)

Narrator 1: Every morning, children from this **village** in Egypt cycle to school. It is a **cheap** and **healthy** way to travel.

Boy: When the roads are busy, the bus is slow but the bike is quick!

Narrator 2: These children live next to Lake Bunyonyi in Uganda. Their school is on the other **side** of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a canoe. The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day.

Boy: Sometimes, when it rains a lot, the water's dangerous and we can't get to school that day.

Narrator 3: This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of snow. The children travel to school on a snowmobile!

Boy: It's cold, but it's fast - and fun!

- ١- قرية
- ٢- رخيص
- ٣- صحي
- ٤- جانب

WB Page (81)

Fatma: Hi Mariam. Is this Malak's pen?

Mariam: No, that's Judy's pen. She always uses that pen.

Fatma: OK. Whose bag is this?

Mariam: That's Huda's bag.

Fatma: No, it's not Huda's bag. Her bag is red. This bag is blue.

Mariam: Oh, OK. Then it's Malak's bag.

Fatma: There's a book on the desk. Is that your book?

Mariam: No, it's the teachers' book. All the teachers use that book.

Fatma: Ah, I know whose ruler this is. It has Dalia and Azza's names on it.



Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. The canoe the students to school and home again every day. **WB**
a. takes b. gives c. drives d. rides
2. The trains are slow but the buses are **WB**
a. early b. busy c. late d. quick
3. He goes to school by bike. He likes **الاسئلة / المفردات 2023**
a. cycling b. walking c. driving d. running
4. A takes people from one side of a lake to another. **الاسئلة / المفردات 2022**
a. bike b. snowmobile c. canoe d. car
5. When the ground is covered with ice, we can go around on a **الاسئلة / المفردات 2022**
a. canoe b. snowmobile c. bike d. bus
6. Planes, trains and cars are means of **الاسئلة / المفردات 2022**
a. roads b. streets c. ports d. transport
7. Some children in Egypt to school. **العربية / النسخة 2021**
a. cycle b. circle c. recycle d. tricycle
8. Students always wear their school **الاسئلة / المفردات 2021**
a. books b. uniforms c. pens d. rulers
9. We never unkind things to other students. **الاسئلة / المفردات 2021**
a. listen b. talk c. say d. speak
10. Students should follow the school **الاسئلة / المفردات 2021**
a. rules b. roles c. rolls d. rulers

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. The children got on their and rode away.
a. bikes b. ships c. canoes d. cars
12. When Hazem arrived in Europe, was falling from the sky.
a. rock b. soil c. sand d. snow
13. I always put my pencils in my pencil
a. classroom b. rubber c. case d. sharpener

Language

The possessive ('s /')

الملكية

• نستخدم ('s) للتعبير عن الملكية في الحالات الآتية:

1- إذا كان المالك «الذي يسيقها» اسماً مفرداً «إنسان - حيوان»:

Ex. It is Ali's room.

Ex. The dog's tail is long.

2- إذا كان المالك اسم جمع غير منتظم «لا ينتهي ب-s»:

Ex. The children's books are here.

Ex. The men's clothes are clean.

• تذكر بعض الأسماء ذات الجمع غير المنتظم

child → children woman → women man → men

3- مع بعض الأسماء «المفردة» التي تشير إلى الوقت / الكمية / القياس:

Ex. We will do our homework in an hour's time.

Ex. A week's holiday is good for you.

• نستخدم (') فقط للتعبير عن الملكية في الحالات الآتية:

1- إذا كان المالك اسم جمع منتهى ب-s):

Ex. The girls' school is clean.

Ex. The boys' bags were lost.

2- مع بعض الأسماء «الجمع» التي تشير إلى الوقت / الكمية / القياس:

Ex. We finished the text in two hours' time.

Ex. A three weeks' holiday is good for you.



1- نستخدم (') أو (s) إذا كان المالك اسم مفرد منتهى ب-s):

Ex. Lamees's shirt is nice.

Ex. Lamees' shirt is nice.

2- إذا كان من يملك الشيء أكثر من شخص نضيف (s) لآخر اسم:

Ex. Salma and Dina's father is a teacher. (هذا يعني أنهم أخوة وأن أباهم معلم)

3- إذا كان المملوك ينتمي لعدة أشخاص نضع (s) لكل شخص:

Ex. Salma's and Dina's fathers are teachers. (هذا يعني أن أبائهم معلمون)

4- نستخدم (s) بعد بعض أسماء الوظائف لتدل على مكان العمل مثل:

The doctor's = The doctor's clinic عيادة الطبيب

The baker's = The bakery المخبز

The butcher's = The butcher's shop محل الجزارة

Ex. Mustafa always goes to the baker's to buy bread.

لاحظ هذه الجملة أيضاً:

Ex. I went to Muhammad's yesterday.

ذهبت لمنزل محمد أمس

أي أنه إذا تم استخدام الفاصلة العليا apostrophe بعد اسم الشخص فتعني المكان الذي يقيم فيه.

• نستخدم أداة الاستفهام (Whose) للسؤال عن الملكية:

Whose + الشئ/الأشياء + is / are ?

Ex. Whose pencil is that?

• للإجابة نستخدم (ضمائر الملكية/ صفات الملكية 's) :

Ex. It's mine.

Ex. It's my pencil.

Ex. It's Ali's

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- The names are Mena and Soha. **SB**
a. girl's b. girls c. girl d. girls'
- That is not the children's notebook. It is the **SB**
a. teacher b. teachers c. teacher's d. teachers's
- This is the room. They always have rest there. **SB**
a. teacher b. teachers' c. teacher's d. teachers
- These are the football shirts. They will wear them tomorrow. **SB**
a. boy's b. boy c. boys's d. boys'
- That is not Mr Abdelaziz's ball. It is the ball. **SB**
a. children b. children's c. childrens' d. childs'
- A: Where are the books? B: They took them outside. **ادعوا أسوس 2021**
a. pupils' b. pupils c. pupil's d. pupil

Bit by Bit Exercises

- That car is mine, and that one over there is
a. Hossam b. Hossam's c. Hossams d. the Hossam
- A: car is this? B: It's my father's.
a. Who's b. Who c. Who is d. Whose
- Tamer finished his homework in an time.
a. hour's b. hour c. hours d. hours'
- A: books are these? B: They are mine.
a. Where b. Whose c. Who's d. Who
- My favourite food is pizza. They get three every week.
a. brothers b. brother's c. brothers' d. brother

Lessons 3 & 4

- The tail is very long.
a. cat b. cats' c. cat's d. cats's
- mother is a nurse.
a. Ola and Leila b. Ola and Leila's
c. Ola's and Leilas d. Ola's and Leila's
- WC is next to the library.
a. Men's b. Mens' c. Men d. Mens
- The is a shop where you can buy meat.
a. butcher b. butcher's c. butchers d. butchery

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB & Exams

- This is Alis phone. It's new! **WB** (.....)
- These are my sisters shoes. Her name is Huda. **WB** (.....)
- This my grandparents's house. **سبهاج 2023** (.....)
- A: Who laptop is that? B: It's mine. **الشيعة/طسبا 2023** (.....)
- The girls' name is Noha. **وسبة الاستدراية 2021** (.....)

Bit by Bit Exercises

- Who's pencil is this? (.....)
- I can't find my book. I'll take my friend book. (.....)
- You mustn't take people things without asking them. (.....)
- I couldn't find the boy's toys, so they were sad. (.....)
- Tamer boots are new. (.....)

Speaking

Talking about journeys to school: الحديث عن رحلات الذهاب إلى المدرسة

Question

How do you travel to school?

How long does it take?

Why do some children need to take difficult journeys to school?

Why is it important to go to school?

Answer

I travel to school by bus.

It takes about half an hour.

Because this is the only way they can go to school.

Because we all need to learn and study.



General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hisham and Sherif are talking about their journeys to school.

Hisham : Hello! Sherif. How are you?

Sherif : Hi, Hisham. 1

Hisham : 2

Sherif : I travel to school by bus.

Hisham : 3

Sherif : It takes about half an hour. How about you?

Hisham : 4

Sherif : 5

Hisham : Yes, it is important to go to school. We must come to school to learn.

Sherif : You are right.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. A: Did you travel on your ?

B: No, there wasn't any snow outside.

a. car b. rocket c. snowmobile d. bus

2. Some children in Uganda usually cross the river in a . 2020 البشريّة / الحسيّية

a. train b. taxi c. bus d. canoe

3. I've bought a new bike; I like to to school.

a. cycle b. follow c. walk d. fly

4. My father doesn't have a car, he uses

a. PE b. transport c. economics d. rules

5. We must follow the in the museum.

a. roles b. rolls c. rules d. reels

6. Our train arrived at Cairo station time.

a. at b. on c. to d. about

7. your glasses made of plastic?

a. Is b. Has c. Was d. Are

Language

8. Don't eat that; it's the food.

a. dog b. dogs c. dog's d. dogs's

9. My sister goes to a school.

a. girls' b. girls c. girl's d. girl

10. I can use all my clothes. Theirs fit me.

a. brother b. brothers c. brother's d. brothers'

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I took my friend book by mistake and he didn't find it. ()

2. Who shirt is this? ()

3. The childrens' toys are all new. ()

4. Mona's and Huda's house is near their school. ()

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

محبّات عنه في آخر الوحدة

Your journey to school

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- When do you get up on school days? - How do you go to school?

- When do you get to school? - What do you do on your journey to school?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- On school days, I get up at - I always go to school by

- I like to arrive before the bell rings. - I always talk to my friends on the bus.

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 19-20 WB pages 83-84

Key Vocabulary

subject	مادة دراسية	quite
favourite	مفضل	

استمع إلى المفردات
إلى حد ما / إلى حد كبير



Vocabulary

French	مادة (اللغة الفرنسية)	flag	علم
only	فقط	Hooray!	صيحة للتعبير عن الفرح
really	حقاً	too	أيضاً
dinner	وجبة العشاء	preparatory 1	الصف الأول الإعدادي
mouse	فأرة الكمبيوتر	friendly	ودود
project	مشروع		

Expressions & Prepositions

Let's + inf.	هيا بنا	at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
have a shower	ياخذ دش	work with computers	يتعامل مع الكمبيوتر
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	at the end of	في نهاية
It's my favourite.	إنها المفضلة لدي.	put on	يرتدي (ملابس مثلاً)
bad at	سيء (ضعيف المستوى) في	best wishes	أفضل الأمنيات
in bed	في الفراش		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	woken up
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
read	يقرا	read	read
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn

Language Notes

1) Indirect questions

- لاحظ أنه عندما يتحول سؤال من كلام مباشر إلى كلام غير مباشر يأتي بعد كلمة الاستفهام الفاعل ثم الفعل :

Ex. I want to know where you will go.

Ex. We want to know what your parents do at the weekend.

2) very - quite

- يستخدم ظروف الدرجة Adverb of degree قبل الصفة لتبين درجة حدوثها :

very	جداً	quite	إلى حد ما / إلى حد كبير
------	------	-------	-------------------------

Ex. I'm good at maths.

Ex. I'm very good at maths.

Ex. I'm quite good at maths.

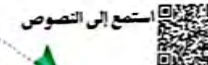
Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Can you tell me ?
a. when the lesson starts
b. when the lesson does start
c. when the lesson start
d. when does the lesson start
- Hala is good at French.
a. much
b. very
c. more
d. many

Audioscript

SB Page (19)



Leila : There's the bell!(1)

Aya : What subject have we got next?

Leila : Let's look at the timetable. We've got computer studies next, in the hall(2). Hooray!

Aya : Computer studies... I'm not very good at computer studies!

Leila : I love it! It's my favourite! What's your favourite subject, Aya?

Aya : I like science and languages.



١- جرس
٢- ردهة

- Lella** : Are you good at languages?
- Aya** : I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French.
- Lella** : Who's our English teacher this year?
- Aya** : It's Mrs Amal.
- Lella** : Oh, good. She is really friendly. When have we got English?
- Aya** : It's after break.
- Lella** : What time is break?
- Aya** : It's from quarter past ten to half past ten. Let's meet in the playground and go to the library.
- Lella** : OK!

Reading

SB Page (20)

A Day in My Life!

Amira is from Egypt.

Q : How old are you, and where are you from?

A : I'm twelve years old, and I'm from Hurghada⁽¹⁾.

Q : What subjects do you like?

A : This year, I'm in preparatory 1⁽²⁾ at school. My favourite subjects are science, computer studies and maths. We have science and maths in the first lesson every day, but we only have computer studies on Wednesday. I like music, too⁽³⁾, but I'm not very good at it!

Q : What do you usually do after school?

A : I sometimes read or watch TV. I always do my homework before I have dinner⁽⁴⁾. After dinner, I usually have a shower⁽⁵⁾ and read my book in bed. What time do you wake up⁽⁶⁾ and go to bed?



- ١- مدينة العرندة
٢- الصف الأول
٣- أيضا
٤- وجبة العشاء
٥- يأخذ دش
٦- يستيقظ

WB Page (83)

- Hatem** : What's your favourite subject, Hazem?
- Hazem** : I like English.
- Hatem** : Who's our English teacher this year?
- Hazem** : It's Mrs Eman.
- Hatem** : She's a good teacher. And when have we got English?
- Hazem** : We have it today, after break. Then we have maths.
- Hatem** : Good, I like maths. Are you good at maths?
- Hazem** : I'm quite good at maths. I'm not bad at science, too.
- Hatem** : Yes, you're good at science. What time is break?
- Hazem** : Now. Let's go to the playground.

WB Page (84)

New Message

Hi Nagwa

How are you? You want to know what my parents⁽¹⁾ do at the weekend. My father works with⁽²⁾ computers. My mother is a teacher. My dad never works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework! We often go shopping⁽³⁾. When it is not very hot, we usually go to the park. My brother always plays football when we go there! He is very good at⁽⁴⁾ football. What about you? What do you do at the weekend?

Best wishes

Nesma

- ١- الوالدان
٢- يتعامل مع
٣- نذهب للتسوق
٤- جيد في

Send

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. What's your subject?
a. favourite b. favour c. fat d. heavy

SB

Bit by Bit Exercises

2. My mother goes once a week.
a. the shop b. shops c. shop d. shopping
3. What time do you usually get ?
a. up b. to c. of d. under
4. We study six at school.
a. objects b. subjects c. buildings d. jobs
5. Adel is polite.
a. quit b. quiet c. quick d. quite
6. Mr Ashraf is, so all the students like him.
a. friend b. unfriendly c. friendly d. friendship
7. Ahmed always a shower when he gets home from school.
a. has b. makes c. builds d. does
8. My father always works computers.
a. about b. with c. for d. over
9. Egypt's has three colours; red, white and black.
a. boat b. fly c. flag d. journey

Speaking

Asking and answering about a school day:

السؤال والاجابة عن يوم مدرسي

Question

What subject have we got next?
What is your favourite subject?
Are you good at languages?
Who is our English teacher this year?
When have we got science?

Answer

It's computer studies next.
I like science.
I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French.
It's Mrs Amal.
It is after break.

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mustafa and Omar are talking about school.

Omar : What is your favourite subject, Mustafa?

Mustafa : 1

Omar : 2

Mustafa : Mr Muhammed is our English teacher this year.

Omar : He's a good teacher. 3

Mustafa : We've got English today, after break.

Omar : Are you good at English?

Mustafa : 4

Omar : What about science?

Mustafa : 5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

- A: What have we got next? B: It is computer studies next.
a language b timetable c school d subject
- We're late. Let's now.
a left b leave c leaving d leave's
- Tamer wants to know where spend the weekend.
a will I b will c won't d I will
- A: What is your food? B: I like fish.
a favourite b bad c favour d kind
- This problem is difficult to solve.
a quiet b quiz c quite d quit

Review

Vocabulary

library	مكتبة	typical	نموذجي [معتاد]	snowmobile	رحافة جليد
hall	ردهة (قاعة كبيرة)	transport	النقل والمواصلات	quite	إلى حد ما/ إلى حد كبير
canoe	قارب صغير خفيف	playground	ملعب/ فناء	bike	دراجة (هوائية)
subject	مادة دراسية	bell	جرس	cycle (d)	يقود دراجة
favourite	مفضل	social studies	مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية	science	مادة العلوم
drama	مادة الفن المسرحي	art (الرسم)	مادة التربية الفنية (الرسم)	home economics	الاقتصاد المنزلي
computer studies	مادة الحاسب الآلي	religion	التربية الدينية	PE (Physical Education)	التربية البدنية (الرياضية)

Language

1 Adverbs of frequency



always
دائما



usually
عادة



often
غالبا



sometimes
أحيانا



never
أبدا

Ex. I always help my mother at home.

Ex. We never make noise in the library.

How often....? كم عدد المرات.....؟

Ex. How often do you go to the cinema?

2 The possessive ('s / ')

- All's book.
- The dogs' food
- The boys' books
- The childrens' toys
- Jame's (James') car

Speaking

1 Asking about the time:

السؤال عن الوقت

للسؤال عن وقت حدوث شيء نستخدم أحد الأساليب الآتية:

What time + do/ does +
فاعل + فعل....?

What time is + فاعل?

Ex. What time does science start
on Sunday?

Ex. What time is the break?

2 Talking about journeys to school:

الحديث عن رحلات الذهاب إلى المدرسة:

Question

How do you travel to school?

How long does it take?

Why do some children need to take
difficult journeys to school?

Why is it important to go to school?

Answer

I travel to school by bus.

It takes about half an hour.

Because this is the only way they
can go to school.Because we all need to learn and
study.

3 Asking and answering about a school day:

السؤال والاجابة عن يوم مدرسي:

Question

What subject have we got next?

What is your favourite subject?

Are you good at languages?

Who is our English teacher this year?

When have we got science?

Answer

It's computer studies next.

I like science.

I'm quite good at English, and I'm
not bad at French.

It's Mrs Amal.

It is after break.

General Exercises on Unit 2

General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

WB

Hala is talking to Omar.

Hala : Good morning, Omar.

Omar : 1

Hala : What subject have we got next, Omar?

Omar : 2

Hala : I like science. 3

Omar : It's English.

Hala : 4

Omar : Yes, I'm quite good at English and French.

Hala : I'm not very good at them.

Omar : OK! 5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. We know it is time for the next lesson when we hear the
a. bell b. plane c. gate d. class

WB

2. Some children in Uganda go to school a canoe.
a. for b. of c. at d. in

WB

3. The children in the USA to school on a snowmobile.
a. take b. travel c. arrive d. fly

WB

4. I arrived Uganda last week.
a. in b. on c. at d. of

WB

5. Students can play games in the
a. library b. bell c. playground d. corridor

الخيار 5 / التسمية 2022

6. is the subject of how to learn numbers.
a. Drama b. Arabic c. Maths d. English

القائمة / علوم 2022

7. You can find a lot of books in a
a. hospital b. cinema c. playground d. library

الخيار 7 / التسمية 2020

SB

8. A: What time does science start on Tuesday? B: It starts at half eleven.
a. to b. past c. o'clock d. on

القائمة / الساعة 2021

9. A travels on water.
a. motorbike b. bike c. canoe d. break10. What subject have we next?
a. got b. broken c. lost d. cared

Language

11. These are my shoes. Her name is Nada. أسبوط / مقيوط 2023
 a. sister's b. sisters c. sisters' d. sister
12. In Egypt, students go to school on Fridays. القيومة أسبوعا 2021
 a. often b. usually c. always d. never
13. This programme is about rights.
 a. women b. womens c. womens' d. women's
14. What time the break?
 a. is b. does c. has d. have
15. The food was under the table.
 a. dog b. dog's c. dogs d. dogs's
16. Hassan is a hard worker. He works hard.
 a. not b. doesn't c. always d. never

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. That is a hou's school. They love it very much. (.....) ذمياط / حربة السج 2023
2. He never is late for school. (.....) سوال / ادقو 2022
3. We found Mona bag. (.....) كقر الشبع / قس 2022
4. My uncle is my fathers brother. (.....) القيسية الخصوص 2021
5. Do you think good people always are happy? (.....) أسط الاسكندرية 2021
6. Karam is a kind man. He is never good to poor people. (.....)
7. The kid's uncle gave them some money. They were happy. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

What you usually do at the weekend

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:
- How often do you study? - Do you like to do your homework?
 - Do you study at the weekend? - What do you often do at the weekend?
 - What do you do when it is not hot? - Do you often meet your friends?
- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- I am a student at school. - I often study every day.
 - I like to do my homework. - I never at the weekend.
 - I often go shopping with my mum.
 - When it is not very hot, we usually

Paragraphs

فقرات انشائية عن موضوعات وبحث 2023

1. My day / What I do every day

(Lessons 1 & 2 / Al Azhar / Test)

I always have a busy day. I do many things every day. I get up at quarter past six. I usually have breakfast with my family. I always walk to school. When we hear the bell, we go to the school hall. We have eight lessons daily. I go home at 3 o'clock. I have a shower, then I do my homework. At 9 o'clock, I go to bed.

2. My journey to school

(Lessons 3 & 4)

On school days, I get up at half past six. I have a shower. I have my breakfast. I don't want to be late for school. I always arrive before the bell rings. I always go to school by bus. It always takes a long time to go to school. The streets in my town are always busy. I always talk to my friends on the bus. It's a nice journey. I like it very much.

3. What I usually do at the weekend

(General Exercises)

I am a student at a prep school. I always study my lessons well. I often study every day. I like to do my homework, too. I never study at the weekend, but sometimes I read a book! I often go shopping with my mum. When it is not very hot, we usually go to the park. I usually meet my friends there. We always have a nice time there. This helps me study my lessons well again.



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- They have after Arabic.
a. maths b. English c. science d. social studies
- Ali likes
a. maths b. science c. English d. Arabic
- is Ali's favourite day.
a. Monday b. Tuesday c. Saturday d. Wednesday
- likes Social Studies.
a. Ali b. Omar c. Maher d. Salah

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Imad and Hatem are at school.

Imad : We have got English today, after break. Then we have maths.

Hatem : Good, I like maths. ①

Imad : Yes, I'm quite good at maths. I'm not bad at science.

Hatem : When is the break?

Imad : ② Now, let's go to the playground.

Hatem : ③

Imad : We can play games with our friends.

Hatem : ④

Imad : I like playing with them, too.

Hatem : OK! ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

Test

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Omar. I enjoyed reading books. One day, I went to the school library to read a book about space travel. Mr Nader, our teacher of science, asked us to read it. On my way to it, I found a small bag on the ground. I opened it to see if I could read the name of its owner. Inside the bag there was an expensive watch and a lot of money. I didn't find any names so I took it to the headmaster who was pleased because I was honest. Later on, Mr. Nader went to my classroom and thanked me because the bag I found was his.

WB

A. Answer the following questions:

- What did Mr Nader ask the students to do?
- Why did Omar open the bag?
- Who was the owner of the bag?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Omar gave the bag to
a. Mr Nader b. the headmaster c. its owner d. his neighbour
- Mr Nader was a
a. librarian b. scientist c. headmaster d. teacher
- The underlined word "it" refers to the
a. bag b. book c. watch d. library

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The room is upstairs. You can go up to see them.
a. child's b. child c. children d. children's
- Mr Adel doesn't like flying, so he travels by plane.
a. always b. not c. never d. often
- What school should you follow?
a. games b. rules c. gates d. classes
- is the language of England.
a. French b. English c. Arabic d. Spanish

WB

5. Sameh goes to his school on his
 a. bike b. brick c. break d. back
6. At break, I play games with my friends in the
 a. classroom b. cinema c. playground d. theatre
7. Our school has many books in its
 a. library b. gym c. office d. hall
8. My little son is learning to the time.
 a. say b. take c. draw d. tell
9. When we hear the, we go to the school hall.
 a. radio b. noise c. ball d. bell
10. We speak English in our English lessons. It's very useful for us.
 a. never b. no c. always d. does not

WB

أسوان / إدمو 2021

الشرقية / منشأة أبو عمر 2021

WB

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. That is Ahmed and Hossam house. (.....)
 2. We say never unkind things. (.....)
 3. That's the boys school. (.....)
 4. We are good students. We always forget our homework. (.....)

WB

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

WB

Your daily life

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| - Do you usually have a busy day? | - When do you usually get up? |
| - Who do you usually have breakfast with? | - How do you usually go to school? |
| - When do you get home? | - When do you go to bed? |
| يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية: | |
| - I always have a busy day. | - I get up at |
| - I usually have breakfast with | |
| - We have lessons every school day. | |
| - I go home at o'clock. | - I go to bed at o'clock. |

New Hello!

3
UNIT

Different people



Objectives

Reading:

A description of a sports star; a blog post; *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*.

Writing:

A blog post about a friend.

Listening:

Descriptions of people.

Speaking:

Describing people; talking about likes and dislikes.

Language:

have / has got; can / can't

Life Skills:

Respect for diversity; resilience.



Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 22 - 25 WB pages 86 - 87

Key Vocabulary

goal	هدف (في مباراة)	curly hair	شعر مجعد
Europe	قارة أوروبا	blond* hair	شعر أشقر
glasses	نظارة	scarf (scarfs/ scarves)	وشاح (طرحة)
beard	لحية (شعر الذقن والوجه)	sports star	نجم رياضي
moustache*	شارب (شنب)	fan	معجب / مشجع
grey	رمادي اللون	smile (n) (d)	ابتسامة / يبتسم
dark hair	شعر داكن	score (d)	يحرز / يسجل (أهداف / نقاط)
straight hair	شعر غير مجعد		

Vocabulary

features	سمات / صفات	Italian	اللغة الإيطالية
famous	مشهور	the Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة
fast runner	شخص سريع الجري	normal life	حياة عادية
metre	متر (وحدة طول)	nicely	بلطف
kilo (kilogram)	كيلو (وحدة وزن)	queen	ملكة
footballer	لاعب كرة قدم	arm	ذراع
baby bird	صغير الطائر	giraffe	زرافة
squash	لعبة الاسكواش	jump (ed)	يقفز
funny	فكاهي / مضحك	carry (ied)	يحمل

Expressions & Prepositions

score goals	يسجل أهداف	easy for	سهل لـ
give money	يمنح مالا	for many days	لعدة أيام
give presents	يمنح هدايا	time for hobbies	وقت للهوايات
play / do a sport	يلعب رياضة	of course	بالطبع
take a holiday	ياخذ اجازة	(be) able to	قادر على
play video games	يلعب ألعاب الفيديو	go at 900 km/h	تسير بسرعة ٩٠٠ كم/الساعة
short for	قصير على (ممارسة رياضة)	pick up	يلتقط
play for	يلعب لصالح		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present

give
build

يعطي / يمنح
يبني

Past simple

gave
built

Past Participle

given
built

Word

Meaning

Opposite

fast	سريع	quick	slow	بطيء
kind	عطوف	friendly	unkind / unfriendly	غير عطوف / غير ودود
poor	فقير	needy	rich	غني
famous	مشهور	well-known	unknown	غير معروف
weak	ضعيف	helpless	strong	قوي

Definitions

beard	لحية	hair that grows on a man's face or chin ⁽¹⁾
blond	أشقر	yellow or light ⁽²⁾ brown hair
curly	مجعد	hair that has turns ⁽³⁾
dark	داكن	brown or black
moustache	شارب (شنب)	hair that grows above a man's top lip ⁽⁴⁾
score	يحرز / يسجل	win points in a game or match
straight	غير مجعد	without any turns
kind	عطوف	wanting to help and be good to people
smile	يبتسم / ابتسامة	when the corners of your mouth turn up to show that you are happy

Language Notes

1) Asking for and giving measurements

نسال عن المقاسات بالصيغة الآتية: ؟ الشخص / الشيء + be + الصفة + How

Ex. How tall is Salah?

نصف مقياس شخص / شيء كالآتي: الصفة + وحدة القياس + المقاس + be + الشخص / الشيء

Ex. Salah is 1.75 metres tall.

OR He is a 1.75-metre-tall player.

2) help + (to) inf. ... يساعد ... أن

يأتي بعد الفعل help مفعول ثم (المصدر + to) أو (المصدر بدون to):

Ex. Salah helped people (to) build schools and hospitals.

3) fast سريع

- تستخدم fast كصفة وكحال.
لاحظ أن الصفة تصف الاسم والحال يصف الفعل.

Ex. Salah is a fast runner.

Ex. Salah runs fast.

هذه الكلمات أيضًا تستخدم كصفات وأحوال. early late

4) enjoy + v-ing يستمتع بـ

Ex. Emad enjoys playing video games.

5) tall - long

طويل (تستخدم مع الأشخاص والحيوانات والمباني والأشجار) tall (adj)

Ex. She is a tall girl. (Not a long girl)

Ex. There are many tall trees in this garden.

طويل (تستخدم مع المسافات والأشياء والوقت وأجزاء الجسم) long (adj)

Ex. It's a long way to Aswan. (Not a tall way)

Ex. It took me a long time to answer the test.

6) like - look like

What is (somebody / something) like? للسؤال عن الرأي في شخص أو شيء نستخدم:

Ex. What is Ahmed like?

- للإجابة نذكر وصف عام للشخص أو الشيء.

- Ahmed's funny and smart.

What does (someone / something) look like? للسؤال عن مظهر شخص أو شيء نستخدم:

Ex. What does Ahmed look like?

- للإجابة نذكر وصف لمظهر الشخص أو الشيء.

- Ahmed's tall with curly hair.

7) glass - a glass - glasses

• glass [اسم لا يعد] زجاج (مادة لصنع الأكواب والنوافذ)

Ex. That window is made of glass and wood.

• glasses [اسم جمع] نظارة

Ex. I can't see without my glasses.

• a glass [اسم يعد] كوب زجاجي

Ex. Would you like a glass of juice?

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Omnia always helps her mum the house.
a. cleans b. cleaning c. clean d. to cleaning
- The rabbit can run
a. faster than b. fastly c. fastest d. fast
- Did you enjoy my new poem?
a. read b. reading c. to read d. to reading
- My dad bought a new table with legs.
a. deep b. tall c. long d. far
- A: What is Sameh ? B: He is brave and honest.
a. like b. likes c. liking d. look like
- This famous man always wears dark
a. glass b. a glass c. glasses d. glassy



Audioscript

SB Page (23)

استمع إلى النص



Mazin : There's my friend, Samir.

Mum : I don't know Samir. What does he look like⁽¹⁾?

Mazin : He's got short, dark hair⁽²⁾.

Mum : Oh, I think⁽³⁾ I can see⁽⁴⁾ him. Has he got glasses⁽⁵⁾?

Mazin : No, he hasn't. His dad's with him.

Mum : Has Samir's dad got a beard⁽⁶⁾?

Mazin : Yes, he has.

Mum : Oh, yes. I can see Samir now.



- 1- يبدو
- 2- شعر داكن
- 3- اعتقد
- 4- أرى
- 5- نظارة
- 6- لحية

Say it correctly

- moustache (moust) في هذه الكلمة مثل كلمة (moust)
- blond (long) في هذه الكلمة مثل نطقهما في كلمة (long)
- beard (here) في كلمة (here)



My favourite sports star⁽¹⁾ is Doha Elghobashy. She plays volleyball⁽²⁾ for Egypt. She's very tall⁽⁴⁾. She's 180 centimetres tall. She's strong⁽³⁾ and she's fast⁽⁵⁾. She can jump⁽⁶⁾ very high! She's friendly⁽⁷⁾. She always has a big smile⁽⁸⁾.

- ١- مفضل
- ٢- نجم رياضي
- ٣- الكرة الطائرة
- ٤- طويلة
- ٥- قوية
- ٦- سريعة
- ٧- تقفز
- ٨- ودودة
- ٩- ابتسامة

Reading

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He plays football for a very good team⁽¹⁾ in Europe⁽²⁾. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring⁽³⁾ goals⁽⁴⁾. He is a fast runner⁽⁵⁾.



Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile. He is quite⁽⁶⁾ short for a footballer⁽⁷⁾. He is 1.75 metres tall. In this photo, Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly⁽⁸⁾ hair⁽⁹⁾ and a beard.

He is a kind⁽¹⁰⁾ person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to poor people. He is very friendly and he always talks to his fans⁽¹¹⁾.

He has not got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

- ١- فريق
- ٢- أوروبا
- ٣- إحراز / تسجيل
- ٤- أهداف
- ٥- شخص سريع
- ٦- الجري
- ٧- إلى حد ما
- ٨- لاعب كرة قدم
- ٩- شعر مجعد
- ١٠- عطوف / حنون
- ١١- مشجعون

Say it correctly

* Europe

حرفي ال (e) في أول وآخر هذه الكلمة لا ينطقان

* curly (bird) في كلمة (ur) في هذه الكلمة مثل نطق الحرفان (ir) في كلمة (bird) ينطق الحرفان (ur) في هذه الكلمة مثل نطق الحرفان



The woman in the first picture has got long straight hair⁽¹⁾ and glasses. The man in the second picture has got short curly dark hair⁽²⁾ and a moustache⁽³⁾. The second woman has got short blond hair⁽⁴⁾. The second man has got short dark hair and a beard.

- ١- شعر غير مجعد
- ٢- شعر مجعد داكن
- ٣- شارب (شنب)
- ٤- شعر أشقر

Mohamed Salah can score lots of goals and he can run very fast. He lives in England. He can speak English, of course⁽¹⁾. He lived in Italy for two years, so he can speak Italian, too! He is famous, so he can't have a normal life⁽²⁾. If he goes outside, many people want to talk to him. He is very busy. He can't take many holidays.

- ١- بالطبع
- ٢- حياة طبيعية

Videoscript

Of course, football is a popular⁽¹⁾ sport in Egypt. There are many excellent⁽²⁾ Egyptian footballers. Mohammed Salah is one of the best players in the world. He's played for some famous football clubs in England and Italy.



Hossam Hassan, Mido and Essam El Hadary are all famous Egyptian footballers. They played football for teams in Africa and Europe.

People love playing it... and watching it.

Thousands of people go to see football clubs like Al Ahly.. and El-Zamalek.

The country's national side⁽³⁾ are known as the Pharaohs⁽⁴⁾. They often play in the World Cup⁽⁵⁾. This is a tournament⁽⁶⁾ for the best teams in the world.

The Pharaohs sometimes win a tournament called the Africa Cup of Nations⁽⁷⁾. This is a competition⁽⁸⁾ for countries in Africa. In 2019, it was in Egypt!

Do you like playing football?

Do you like watching football?

- ١- شعبي / محبوب
- ٢- ممتاز
- ٣- الجانب الوطني
- ٤- الفراعنة
- ٥- كأس العالم
- ٦- مسابقة رياضية
- ٧- كأس الأمم الأفريقية
- ٨- مسابقة

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. The woman in the picture has got long hair. WB
a. street b. straight c. star d. small
2. A baby bird is very It cannot fly for many days. WB
a. weak b. rich c. strong d. tall
3. How is the Cairo Tower? - It is 187 metres. WB
a. long b. strong c. tall d. fast
4. Salah gives money to help people schools and hospitals. SB
a. to building b. to build c. building d. built

5. A plane is very It can go at 900 km/h.

- a. tall b. weak c. slow d. fast

6. A: How tall is Mohamed Salah?

B: He is 1.75 tall.

- a. metres b. kilograms c. centimetres d. kilometres

7. Camels are very They can carry 200 kilos of bags.

- a. weak b. low c. strong d. poor

8. My aunt is very She always gives me presents.

- a. kind b. poor c. tall d. fast

9. Mohamed Salah a lot of goals.

- a. records b. plays c. scores d. gives

10. Farida has got hair, it is not straight.

- a. curly b. careful c. cheap d. soft

11. People who like or admire someone are called

- a. pans b. vans c. hats d. fans

12. My grandfather has got a big on his mouth.

- a. hair b. beard c. moustache d. ear

Bit by Bit Exercises

13. This old man has got a white long

- a. board b. beard c. bread d. bar

14. What your cousin look like?

- a. is b. do c. are d. does

15. The girls of that school always wear grey on their heads.

- a. scarves b. shirts c. shoes d. glasses

16. This good man always money to poor people.

- a. wins b. gives c. loses d. does

17. My favourite team scored two yesterday.

- a. matches b. presents c. cups d. goals

18. I see so much better with my new

- a. glass b. glasses c. glassy d. a glass

19. is my favourite colour.

- a. Grey b. Grow c. Grade d. Great

20. The opposite of "poor" is

- a. weak b. needy c. rich d. strong

Language

1- have / has got

Form التكوين

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع

He / She / It / اسم مفرد

have ('ve) got

has ('s) got

Usage الاستخدام

1- نستخدم (have / has got) عندما نصف السمات الشخصية للشخص/شيء/حيوان بمعنى (الديه/يملك).

Ex. I / You / We / They have got ('ve got) dark hair.

Ex. He / She has got ('s got) curly hair.

2- نستخدم (have / has got) لتعبر عن الملكية بمعنى (الديه - يملك).

Ex. I have got ('ve got) a car.

Ex. She has got ('s got) a villa.

Negative النفي

• للنفي نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع

He / She / It / اسم مفرد

have not (haven't) got

has not (hasn't) got

Ex. I / You / We / They have not (haven't) got blond hair.

Ex. He / She / It has not (hasn't) got curly hair.

Question السؤال

• للاستفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

Have / Has + فاعل + got? (كلمة إستفهام)

Ex. Have you got glasses?

• Yes, I have. - No, I haven't.

Ex. How many sisters have you got?

• I have got two sisters.



1- يمكن أن نستخدم (have / has got) عندما نجيب عن السؤال على شكل شخص:

Ex. What do they look like?

- They have got short hair. They haven't got glasses.

Ex. What does your uncle look like?

- He has got a beard and a moustache.

2- من الممكن أن نستخدم ظروف التكرار بعد (have / has).

Ex. Salah has usually got a big smile

Check

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB

- Has your friend straight hair?
a get b getting c to get d got
- My grandfather a long white beard.
a have got b get c has got d are getting
- These players got strong legs.
a have b are c has d can

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- Has your brother get long hair? (.....)
- They has got big smiles. (.....)
- Have we getting English today? (.....)

2- can / cannot (can't)

Form & Usage التكوين والاستخدام

مصدر الفعل + can + inf. (إثبات)
فاعل + cannot (can't) + inf. (نفي)

- نستخدم **can / cannot (can't)** للتعبير عن القدرة / عدم القدرة على فعل شيء.

Ex. We **can** give money to help poor people.

Ex. I **cannot (can't)** pick up that box. My arms are weak.

Question السؤال

- للاستفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

Can + فاعل + Inf? (كلمة استفهام)

Ex. Can you speak English? • Yes, I **can**. - No, I **can't**.

Ex. What sport **can** you play? • I **can** play volleyball.

Notes

- يمكن أيضاً التعبير عن القدرة / عدم القدرة على فعل شيء باستخدام:

فاعل + be + able to + inf.

Ex. Ahmed **is able to** run very fast.

Ex. I **am not able to** stand on one hand.

Ex. Are you **able to** run fast?

Exercises on Language

Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hossam and Kamal are talking about Mohamed Salah.

Hossam : Who is your favourite sports star?

Kamal : Mohamed Salah. ①

Hossam : Yes, I hear of him. Why is he famous? ②

Kamal : ③

Hossam : Can he run fast?

Kamal : ④

Hossam : ⑤

Kamal : He has got dark, curly hair and a beard.

Hossam : What is he like?

Kamal : ⑥ . He gives money to build schools and hospitals.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- I got glasses.
a haven't b has c hasn't d don't SB
- Mohamed Salah score lots of goals.
a has b do c have d can WB
- Samir got short hair.
a is b have c has d was SB
- We got a new hospital in our town.
a has b have c is d are
- A: Has Samir got short hair?
B : Yes, he
a have b is c has d does
- Ola got glasses, but I have got glasses.
a hasn't b has c have d haven't
- My best friend short dark hair.
a have got b is c get d has got
- My brother has a laptop.
a got b gets c get d getting

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. A: you help me carry this box? B: Yes, sure.
a. Are b. Does c. Can d. Did
10. This team win the match. The players are very slow.
a. can b. have c. do d. can't
11. you and your brother got strong arms?
a. Has b. Have c. Does d. Are
12. A: you climb a tree? B: No, I can't.
a. Can b. Are c. Have d. Does
13. How you get the full mark in the test?
a. have b. can c. are d. does
14. We go out today because we have too much homework.
a. will b. haven't c. must d. can't
15. She long hair.
a. hasn't got b. get c. haven't got d. have got
16. Can your sister in English?
a. sang b. to sing c. singing d. sing
17. He is weak, but he carry the heavy box.
a. can b. can't c. mustn't d. doesn't
18. You speak to your friends during an exam.
a. can b. will c. can't d. doesn't
19. My uncle's twins got blond hair.
a. is b. has c. have d. are

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB & Exams

1. Tarek's uncle has got a beard, but he has got a moustache. WB (.....)
2. We can giving money to help poor people. SB (.....)
3. Have you got dark hair? - Yes, I do. WB (.....)
4. All my brothers and sisters have get dark curly hair. WB (.....)
5. Has you got a mobile phone? (.....) 2023
6. He has getting a long white beard. (.....) 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. The students in this class can spoke French. (.....)
8. Doaa can't play volleyball very well. She always wins. (.....)
9. Can Sara spelt English words? (.....)
10. I cannot lifting that table. (.....)

Speaking

Describing your favourite sports star

• ادرس الأسئلة والأجابات التالية لتساعدك في الاجابة عن سؤال Dialogue
• وصف نجمك الرياضي المفضل

Question

- Who is your favourite sports star?
من نجمك الرياضي المفضل؟
- What sport does he / she do?
ما الرياضة التي يمارسها / تمارسها؟
- What does he / she look like?
كيف يبدو نجمك الرياضي المفضل؟
- What can he / she do?
ماذا بمقدوره / بمقدورها أن يفعل / تفعل؟

Answer

- My favourite sports star is
نجمي الرياضي المفضل هو / هي
- He / She plays
يلعب / تلعب
- He's / She's got (quite/very) long / short hair and ...
لديه / لديها شعر طويل / قصير الى حد ما و
- He / She can jump high / score goals.
يستطيع ان يقفز عاليا / يحرز اهدافا.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Amir is asking Shady about his favourite sports star.

Amir : Do you have a favourite sports star, Shady?

Shady : 1

Amir : 2

Shady : His name is Messi.

Amir : 3

Shady : He's got short hair. He's not tall.

Amir : What can he do?

Shady : 4

Amir : Is he very fast?

Shady : 5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Yunis has got short, dark hair.
a. fast b. curly c. boring d. kind
2. Everyone likes Amira because she is very
a. busy b. scary c. unfriendly d. friendly
3. She has got beautiful hair.
a. blond b. black c. wrong d. tall
4. Who is your favourite sports ?
a. stairs b. stop c. store d. star
5. Hala is wearing a nice on her head.
a. beard b. sock c. scarf d. earring

Language

6. I'm too busy. I visit my aunt today.
a. can b. can't c. will d. have
7. What your uncle look like?
a. is b. do c. does d. was
8. This shelf is too high; I reach it.
a. can't b. am c. can d. could
9. Have your favourite singer a beard?
a. get b. gets c. getting d. got
10. Marwa got long hair. She has got short hair.
a. hasn't b. didn't c. has d. was

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Our house has getting five windows. (.....)
2. I can't answer this question, it's very easy. (.....)
3. A: What does Omar look like?
B: He has get short hair and glasses. (.....)
4. What has you got for dinner? (.....)

سوق / صيف 2023

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

Your favourite sports star

امحباتك عنه في آخر الوحدة

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الاسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- Who is your favourite sports star?
- What nationality is he/she?
- Why is he/she your favourite star?
- What does he/she look like?
- What is he/she like?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- is my favourite sports star.
- He plays very well.
- He plays for
- He has got
- He is very kind. He's very
- He gives money to poor people.

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 26-28 WB page 88-89

Key Vocabulary

boring	ممل	strange	غريب
twice	مرتين	frightened	خائف / مرعوب
adventure	مغامرة	busy	مشغول
wonderland	ارض الخيال	angry	غاضب
character	شخصية (في كتاب / فيلم)	scary	مخيف / مرعب
sensible	عاقل / رزين	dangerous	خطير
brave	شجاع	late	متأخر
clever	ماهر	shout (ed)	يصيح
funny	مضحك / مضحك		

استمع إلى المفردات



Vocabulary

blog post	منشور في مدونة	painting	الرسم بالألوان
learning	تعلم	history	مادة التاريخ
regularly	بانتظام	exciting	مثير
website	موقع على الإنترنت	cool	رائع / بارد
online	متصل بالإنترنت	main	رئيسي / أساسي
art	الرسم	decision	قرار
drawing	الرسم بالقلم الرصاص / الجاف	paint (ed)	يرسم بالألوان

Expressions & Prepositions

twice a week	مرتين في الأسبوع	get angry	يغضب
do maths	يدرس مادة الرياضيات	learn about	يتعلم عن
do art	يرسم	all about me	كل شيء عني
Well done!	أحسن!	look at	ينظر إلى
How things work	كيف تعمل الأشياء	good / bad at + v-ing	جيد / سيء في
make a decision	يتخذ قرار	happy/unhappy about	سعيد/غير سعيد بشأن
feel frightened	يشعر بالخوف	shout at	يصيح في
learn happy	يشعر بالسعادة	frightened of	خائف / مرعوب من

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
swim	يسبح	swam
learn	يتعلم	learnt (learned)
begin	يبدأ	began
understand	يفهم	understood

Lessons 3 & 4

Word	Meaning	Opposite
sensible	عاقل / رزين	wise
brave	شجاع	courageous
clever	ماهر	smart
late	متأخر	not on time
angry	غاضب	cross
		silly
		cowardly
		stupid
		early
		calm

Definitions

blog	مدونة	a website on which someone writes regularly. It is like an online diary
sensible	عاقل / رزين	- thinking carefully before you do the right thing - makes good decisions
brave	شجاع	- not easily frightened - is happy to do something dangerous
clever	ماهر	- good at learning things / knows a lot
busy	مشغول	spending a lot of time doing things
angry	غاضب	is unhappy about something
scary	مخيف / مرعب	something that makes you feel frightened
character	شخصية (في كتاب / فيلم)	a person in a book or film
late	متأخر	arriving after the correct time

Language Notes

① It

- المعروف أن الضمير **it** هو ضمير يستخدم لغير العاقل، ولكن يمكننا أن نستخدمه مع العاقل في الحالات الآتية:

١- عندما نسال عن شخص مجهول لا نعرفه نقول: "Who is **it**?"

- وللإجابة نقول: الاسم **It's + name**

٢- عند التحدث عن طفل رضيع أو لا نعرف نوعه ذكر أم أنثى.

Ex. Your baby was sick yesterday. How is it today?

② (-ed) and (-ing) adjectives

- تستخدم الصفات المنتهية ب(-ed) والصفات المنتهية ب(-ing) لوصف العاقل وغير العاقل.

- تشير الصفات المنتهية ب(-ing) إلى من/ ما يسبب الصفة:

Ex. I think watching TV is boring. [ممل]

- تشير الصفات المنتهية ب(-ed) إلى أن الموصوف يشعر أو لديه هذه الصفة [المتأثر]:

Ex. I want to go out. I feel bored. [شاعر بالملل]

Reading

SB Page (26)

All about me

Hi! My name is Yunis. I have got short, dark curly hair. I live in Alexandria with my mum, dad and two brothers.

My favourite school subject⁽¹⁾ is history⁽²⁾. I love learning about the past. I like maths⁽³⁾ and science⁽⁴⁾ too. I do not like art⁽⁵⁾ because I am not very good at drawing⁽⁶⁾ or painting.

I often⁽⁷⁾ play sport after school. My favourite sport is basketball. I am good at it because I am tall and I can jump high. I like swimming, too. I go swimming twice⁽⁸⁾ a week.

At home, I like reading and playing video games⁽⁹⁾. I do not like watching TV. I think it is boring⁽¹⁰⁾.



- ١- مادة دراسية
- ٢- مادة التاريخ
- ٣- مادة الرياضيات
- ٤- مادة العلوم
- ٥- مادة الرسم
- ٦- الرسم
- ٧- غالباً
- ٨- مرتان
- ٩- ألعاب الفيديو
- ١٠- ممل

استمع إلى النصوص



Lessons 3 & 4

SB Page (28)

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland
by Lewis Carroll

Alice's Adventures⁽¹⁾ in Wonderland⁽²⁾ is a famous children's story. Alice's adventure begins when she goes to Wonderland. Alice thinks that Wonderland is interesting⁽³⁾, but it is a strange⁽⁴⁾ place. She is a sensible⁽⁵⁾ girl, but she does not understand Wonderland! Alice is also brave⁽⁶⁾ and clever⁽⁷⁾. She meets a lot of interesting characters⁽⁸⁾.

Alice often sees the White Rabbit⁽⁹⁾. The White Rabbit is very busy⁽¹⁰⁾ - and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.



The Cheshire Cat⁽¹¹⁾ is a funny⁽¹²⁾ animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly. He tells Alice about Wonderland and helps her to find different places and characters.



The Queen of Hearts⁽¹³⁾ is not very nice. She is a scary⁽¹⁴⁾ person. She is always angry⁽¹⁵⁾ and she shouts at⁽¹⁶⁾ people. Alice is brave, so she is not frightened of⁽¹⁷⁾ her.

At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again.

- ١- مغامرات
- ٢- أرض العجائب
- ٣- شيقة
- ٤- غريب
- ٥- عاقلة/ رزينة
- ٦- شجاعة
- ٧- ماهرة
- ٨- شخصيات
- ٩- الأرنب الأبيض
- ١٠- مشغول
- ١١- قط تشيشاير
- ١٢- مضحك
- ١٣- ملكة القلوب
- ١٤- مخيف
- ١٥- غاضبة
- ١٦- تصيح في
- ١٧- خائفة من

WB Page (88)

1- What is your favourite subject?

My name is Riham. My favourite subject at school is science. I love learning about how things work. I like doing maths, too. I am quite good at maths.



2- Which sport do you like?

I quite like doing sport. My favourite sport is tennis. I like playing it with my friends, but I am not very good at it.

3- What do you do in the evening?

I usually go home after school. I do not like playing computer games. After I do my homework, I like reading a book. I like writing stories, too.

Audioscript

SB Page (27)

Girl 1 : Let's play a **game**. I'm looking at a girl. Who's it?

Girl 2 : Does she like watching TV?

Girl 1 : No, she doesn't.

Girl 2 : Does she like **swimming**?

Girl 1 : Yes, she does.

Girl 2 : It's Noha.

Girl 1 : Good! OK. Number two. Who is it?

Girl 2 : Does she like swimming?

Girl 1 : Yes, she does. She loves swimming!

Girl 2 : Does she like playing **basketball**?

Girl 1 : No, she doesn't.

Girl 2 : It's Dina.

Girl 1 : **Well done**! Three. Who is this?

Girl 2 : Does she like watching TV?

Girl 1 : Yes, she does.

Girl 2 : It's Eman.

Girl 1 : No, it isn't!

Girl 2 : Does she like basketball?

Girl 1 : Yes, she does.

Girl 2 : It's Maya.

Girl 1 : Yes!

Girl 2 : OK, so the **last** one loves **painting**, she likes watching TV and she doesn't like playing basketball. It's Eman.

Girl 1 : Yes again!



١- لعبة / مباراة
٢- السباحة
٣- كرة السلة
٤- أحسنتا
٥- الأخير
٦- الرسم بالألوان



Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- A/An person makes good decisions. **WB**
a. safe b. sensible c. strange d. exciting
- We often get when we are unhappy about something. **WB**
a. angry b. hungry c. scary d. clever
- A person is always doing something. **WB**
a. frightened b. scary c. busy d. free
- A/An person knows a lot. **WB**
a. angry b. scary c. boring d. clever

Lessons 3 & 4

- A person is happy to do something dangerous. **WB**
a. sensible b. busy c. brave d. scary
- After I my homework, I like reading a book. **WB**
a. make b. go c. score d. do
- That black dog looks I'm very afraid.
a. sensible b. scary c. clever d. busy
- Mostafa loves art at school.
a. doing b. making c. taking d. playing
- Alice had interesting in Wonderland.
a. boards b. adventures c. classes d. sports
- A is an online diary.
a. paper b. book c. blog d. block

Bit by Bit Exercises

- We like maths at school.
a. building b. painting c. playing d. doing
- Never at your parents, Ahmed!
a. shout b. damage c. hurt d. shock
- The in that book are fantastic.
a. posts b. characters c. eyes d. centuries
- I don't want to watch this film; it's very
a. boring b. good c. high d. straight
- I go swimming a week.
a. two b. twenty c. twice d. one
- Yunis loves Art because he is good at
a. swimming b. shouting c. running d. drawing
- Mrs Sama teaches at our school.
a. date b. history c. time d. hour
- My hobbies are reading and
a. points b. painted c. paint d. painting
- A: I won the race yesterday. B: Well!
a. do b. done c. did d. does
- I like doing sport. I go swimming
a. regularly b. carelessly c. cowardly d. badly

Language

إذا أتى فعل بعد الأفعال (like - love - enjoy) نضيف له (ing).

Verbs + v-ing

Ex. Samy enjoys playing video games.

Ex. I love learning about the past.

إذا أتى فعل بعد حروف الجر نضيف له (ing) عدا حرف جر (to) الذي يأتي بعده عادة مصدر الفعل.

Prepositions + v-ing

Ex. He is good at running.

Ex. She is bad at drawing.

Ex. She wants to buy a new dress.

نسال عن حب / استمتاع شخص بفعل شيء بالصيغة الآتية:

Do (you / they) like / love / enjoy + V-ing...?

Does (he / she) like / love / enjoy + V-ing...?

وللإجابة نقول:

- Yes, (I / we / they) do.

- No, (I / they / we) don't.

- Yes, (he / she) does.

- No, (he / she) doesn't.

Ex. Do they enjoy swimming?

- Yes, they do.

- No, they don't.

Ex. Does he like playing basketball?

- Yes, he does.

- No, he doesn't.

Exercises on Language

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- Salah likes video games when he is at home. SB
 - play
 - playing
 - plays
 - to playing
- I quite like sport. My favourite sport is tennis. WB
 - to doing
 - does
 - do
 - doing
- you like playing tennis? WB
 - Does
 - Is
 - Do
 - Have
- I don't like painting, but I love WB
 - swimming
 - swim
 - to swimming
 - swam

WB 2023 المنهج / الكتاب

- Mustafa loves Art at school.
 - doing
 - do
 - does
 - to doing

Bit by Bit Exercises

- Soha is good at clothes.
 - making
 - makes
 - make
 - to make
- Do you enjoy at home?
 - stay
 - to stay
 - stays
 - staying
- I like English stories.
 - reads
 - read
 - reading
 - to reads
- A: Does she love cooking? B: Yes, she
 - does
 - do
 - doing
 - to do
- Noha is bad at pictures.
 - to draw
 - drawing
 - draw
 - to drawing

② Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB & Exams

- I'm not good at run. I'm very slow. SB (.....)
- My brother and I don't like watch TV after school. WB 2022 المنهج / الكتاب (.....)

Bit by Bit Exercises

- We love go to the cinema. (.....)
- Does your father like eat pizza? (.....)
- Does your sister enjoy play games? (.....)
- A: Does Sameh like studying maths? B: Yes, he do. (.....)

Speaking

① Describing a character from a story

وصف شخصية من قصة

• للسؤال عن الرأي في شخص نستخدم الآتي:

Question

What do you think of Rami?

ما رأيك في رامي؟

What is Seham like?

كيف تبدو سهام؟

Answer

I think he is a brave person.

أعتقد أنه شخص شجاع.

She is a clever girl.

إنها فتاة ماهرة.

② Expressing likes and dislikes

التعبير عن ما نحب وعن ما لا نحب
- للتعبير عما لا نحب نستخدم صيغة النفي كالتالي:
- للإجابة المختصرة نستخدم

- (No.) + فاعل + don't / doesn't like
- Yes, I do. / No, I don't. (✓)
- Yes, I like. (x) ولا نقول

أدرس الأسئلة والاجابات التالية لتساعدك في الاحابة عن سؤال Dialogue:

- A : What does Mohamed Salah like (doing)?
B : He likes football / playing football.
• A : What food do you like / love?
B : I like / love rice.
• A : Which sport do you like?
B : I like tennis.
• A : What's your favourite subject?
B : I like / love Maths. / I'm good at Maths.
• A : Do you like stories?
B : Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

General Exercises

on Lessons 3 & 4



① Complete the following dialogue:

Dina introduces Noha to Maya.

- Dina : Hi, Maya. This is my friend Noha.
Maya : Hi, Noha! What do you have?
Noha : A book. ①?
Maya : ②?
Noha : Naguib Mahfouz. ③?
Maya : Yes, I like reading stories.
Noha : What's your favourite story?
Maya : ④?
Noha : Is it interesting?
Maya : ⑤

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. The sharks we saw at the film were really
a. scary b. cheerful c. cheap d. low
2. These drawings made us laugh.
a. finally b. fallen c. funny d. flat
3. Don't be That cat is so friendly.
a. interesting b. scary c. cool d. frightened

4. Sailing across the Atlantic is a great
a. adventure b. appearance c. character d. personality
5. A: Who's outside? B: It's me.
a. you b. him c. it d. your
6. This is an interesting story. It has many
a. blogs b. characters c. items d. flags

Language

7. Ola likes history because she loves about the past. 2022 سوفاج
a. learns b. learning c. to learning d. learnt
8. He loves nature. He likes the trees and animals. 2020 تعليمية / شهر شهر
a. watching b. watches c. watch d. is watching
9. Kids usually like , they usually like colours.
a. sleeping b. reading c. playing d. painting
10. If you want to swimming; go to the Red Sea.
a. enjoying b. enjoy c. enjoyed d. enjoys

③ Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He is good at play tennis? (.....) 2022 ذهنية / شهر شهر
2. Hossam is clever at jumps high.
3. Tourists come to Egypt to enjoy visit the Pyramids. (.....)

④ Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

WB

A character in a book or film

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What is your favourite book called? - What is it about?
- Who is your favourite character? - What does he/she do in that book?
- What is your favourite character like?
- Why is he/she your favourite character?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My favourite book is - It's about a boy/girl who
- is a brave boy/girl.
- I like because he/she is a brave boy/girl.

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 29 - 31 WB pages 90 - 92

Key Vocabulary

fun (n)	متعة - شخص أو شيء ممتع	together	معاً / سوياً
personality	شخصية	appearance	المظهر
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	(be) called	يسمى / يدعى

استمع إلى المفردات



Vocabulary

exciting	مثير	Treasure Island	جزيرة الكنز (اسم رواية)
important	مهم	cool	رائع / بارد
difference	اختلاف	storm	عاصفة
brown eyes	عينان بنيت اللون	gable	جملون (سقف منزل مثلث الشكل)
pool	حوض «سباحة»	walk (ed)	يمشي
even	حتى	open (ed)	يفتح

Expressions & Prepositions

He is a lot of fun .	إنه شخص ممتع جداً.	far from	بعيداً عن
do things	يقوم بعمل أشياء	in / on a boat	في/ على قارب
make notes	يدون ملاحظات	tell ... about	يخبر عن
different from / to	مختلف عن	in a wheelchair	على كرسي متحرك
travel around	يتجول		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
run	يجري	ran	run
know	يعرف	knew	known
fall	يسقط	fell	fallen
meet	يقابل	met	met

Word

exciting
cool
important

Meaning

مثير
رائع
مهم

interesting
fantastic
vital

Lessons 5 & 6

Opposite

boring
awful
unimportant

ممل
فظيع
غير مهم



Definitions

wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	a chair with wheels, for people who cannot walk
appearance	المظهر	what a person looks like
personality	الشخصية	what a person is like
hobbies	هوايات	what a person likes doing

Language Notes

1) Joining words (and - but - because)

• and حرف عطف يستخدم للربط بين كلمات أو عبارات أو جمل

Ex. Magda likes reading **and** sport.

Ex. She likes playing basketball **and** she likes playing tennis.

• but (لكن) تستخدم للربط بين جملتين متناقضتين

Ex. I'm short, **but** I can play basketball.

• because (لأن) تستخدم للربط بين جملتين لتوضيح السبب

Ex. I like Basel **because** he is a lot of fun.

2) fun - funny

• fun (n) متعة/لهو

Ex. There was a lot of **fun** in the park yesterday.

• have fun يستمتع

Ex. We **had** a lot of **fun** in Tamer's birthday party.

• be a (great / good) fun متعة/لهو (الشخص مرح/مسل)

Ex. I like my friends because **they are** a lot of **fun**.

• funny (adj) مسلي (مضحك/ فكاهي)

- funny story / joke / film etc.

Ex. I didn't laugh because his joke wasn't **funny**.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Hassan felt ill, he went to school.
a because b but c so d as
- We didn't enjoy the day the weather was bad.
a but b however c because d so
- The children had so much at the zoo.
a fun b fan c funny d fans

Reading SB Page (30)

Who's your best friend?

My **best friend** is called ⁽¹⁾ Basel. He has got straight hair and **brown eyes** ⁽²⁾. He is kind and he is very funny. He likes reading and playing video games. Those are my favourite hobbies, too!

Basel has got a **wheelchair** ⁽⁴⁾ because he cannot walk. It is not easy for Basel to **travel around** ⁽⁵⁾ school. I open doors for Basel and I help him to get things in the



- ١- أفضل صديق
٢- يُدعى
٣- عينان بنية اللون
٤- كرسي متحرك
٥- يتجول
٦- حجرة الفصل
٧- مشكلة
٨- متا/سويا
٩- حتى
١٠- ملعب/فناء
١١- شخص ممتع

Basel's wheelchair is not usually a **problem** ⁽⁷⁾. We do a lot of things **together** ⁽⁸⁾. He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. Sometimes we **even** ⁽⁹⁾ play football in the **playground** ⁽¹⁰⁾. Basel cannot run, but he is fast in his wheelchair!

I like Basel because **he is a lot of fun** ⁽¹¹⁾. I am very happy that he is my friend.

Fady, 12

SB Page (31)

Magda has got a lot of hobbies. She likes reading and sport. She likes playing basketball and she likes playing tennis, but her favourite sport is swimming. She loves swimming! Magda doesn't like playing video games and she also doesn't like playing chess.

Lessons 5 & 6

WB Page (90)

1 My favourite book is **Treasure Island** ⁽¹⁾. It is by Robert Louis Stevenson. It is about a brave boy called Jim. He travels in a big boat to an island. It is very **far from** ⁽²⁾ his home. The boat has got many scary men on it and they all want to find some money on the island. It is very **exciting** ⁽³⁾.



2 My favourite book is **Anne of Green Gables** ⁽⁴⁾ by Lucy Maud Montgomery. It is about an **orphan girl** ⁽⁵⁾ called Anne. She goes to live with a brother and sister in **the country** ⁽⁶⁾. Life is not easy for her and she has many adventures, but Anne is a sensible girl. It is a good book.

3 My favourite book is called **Gulliver's Travels** ⁽⁷⁾, by Jonathan Swift. It is about a clever doctor. He works on a boat, but there is a big **storm** ⁽⁸⁾. He falls in the sea and swims to a strange place. All the people here are very tall. Some of them are very friendly, but some of them are scary. I like the book very much.



- ١- جزيرة الكنز
٢- بعيد عن
٣- مثير
٤- جملون (سقف
منزل مثلث
الشكل)
٥- بنت يتيمة
٦- الريف
٧- رحلات جاليفر
٨- عاصفة

Audioscript

WB Page (90)

1 My name's Nevine. I like **sports** ⁽¹⁾ and I love playing tennis.

2 I'm Sayed. My favourite **subject** ⁽²⁾ is English and I like writing **stories** ⁽³⁾.

3 Hi! I'm Maya. I like **art** ⁽⁴⁾. I don't like drawing but I love painting.

4 I'm Rami. I love **swimming** ⁽⁵⁾, but I don't like swimming in the sea. It's **cold** ⁽⁶⁾.

5 My name's Lina and this is my sister Maya. We don't like watching TV but we like reading books.

- ١- الرياضة
٢- مادة دراسية
٣- قصص
٤- الرسم
٥- السباحة
٦- بارد

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- The strange _____ of that man frightened me.
a. appear b. kindness c. fun d. appearance **WB**
- Osama likes playing football, basketball _____ tennis.
a. but b. and c. so d. because **WB**
- I like swimming in the pool _____ it is nice and cool.
a. but b. before c. because d. ago **WB**
- Leila is a/an _____ girl. She has no father or mother. **WB**
a. orphan b. frightened c. twice d. main
- Hani uses a _____ to go to school because he can't walk. **WB**
a. chair b. wheelchair c. trainer d. sofa
- My favourite book is _____ "Treasure Island". **WB**
a. travelled b. scored c. pulled d. called

Bit by Bit Exercises

- Tarek broke his leg so he couldn't travel _____ the school.
a. around b. about c. above d. over
- My best friend and I love playing chess _____.
a. others b. another c. together d. whether
- My little brother is a lot of _____. I like him so much.
a. funny b. fun c. fan d. fat

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

- My grandfather moves in a/an _____.
a. appearance b. adventure c. wheelchair d. character
- Our new teacher, Mrs Mona, has a kind, friendly _____.
a. personality b. difference c. person d. adventure

Lessons 5 & 6

- Mr. Hashem and his family had _____ at the zoo yesterday.
a. fan b. funny c. fine d. fun
- The man changed his _____ to be unknown to the police.
a. appearance b. danger c. hobby d. adventure
- My friend Tarek's ideas are different _____ mine.
a. for b. from c. about d. in
- The opposite of "exciting" is _____.
a. interesting b. fantastic c. important d. boring
- I'll stay at home _____ it's very cold outside.
a. because b. and c. but d. yet
- What is your new English teacher _____?
a. call b. to call c. called d. calls

2 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

A blog post about yourself

[مخاطب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الاسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What's your name?
- What's your favourite sport?
- What's your favourite subject?
- What do you enjoy doing?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My name is
- My favourite sport is
- My favourite subject is
- I enjoy doing

Review



Vocabulary

goal	هدف (في مباراة)	frightened	خائف/مرعوب	personality	شخصية
Europe	قارة أوروبا	late	متأخر	fun	متعة - شخص أو شيء ممتع
moustache	شارب (شنب)	scarf	وشاح (طرحة)	sensible	عاقِل/رزين
twice	مرتين	glasses	نظارة	funny	فكاهي/مضحك
character	شخصية (يكتب/يفيلم)	beard	لحية (شعر الذقن والوجه)	angry	غاضب
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	fan	مِعِجِب/مَشْجِع	strange	غريب
boring	ممل	adventure	مغامرة	brave	شجاع
appearance	المظهر	wonderland	أرض العجائب	clever	ماهر
straight hair	شعر غير مجعد	together	مَعًا/سويًا	(be) called	يُسمَّى/يُدعى
dark hair	شعر داكن	grey	رمادي اللون	score (d)	يحرز/يسجل
blond hair	شعر أشقر	scary	مخيف/مرعب	shout (ed)	يصرخ
curly hair	شعر مجعد	dangerous	خطير	smile(n)(d)	ابتسامة/يبتسم
busy	مشغول	sports star	نجم رياضي		



Language

① have / has got

إثبات I / You / We / They / اسم جمع → have ('ve) got

He / She / It / اسم مفرد → has ('s) got

نفي I / You / We / They / اسم جمع → have not (haven't) got

He / She / It / اسم مفرد → has not (hasn't) got

استفهام Have / Has + فاعل + got? (كلمة استفهام)

- تستخدم لوصف السمات الشخصية لشخص/شيء/حيوان:

Ex. She has got ('s got) blond hair.

Ex. Her dog has got ('s got) long tail.

Review

② can / cannot (can't)

- تستخدم للتعبير عن القدرة / عدم القدرة على فعل شيء ويأتي بعدهما المصدر.

Ex. Sally can help many people.

Ex. Sally can't drive the new car.

③ Verbs + v-ing / Prepositions + v-ing

- يأتي بعد الأفعال (like / love / enjoy) فعلًا مضاف له (ing)

- يأتي بعد حروف الجر فعلًا مضاف له (ing)

Ex. Do you like / love / enjoy watching TV?

- Yes, I do.

Speaking

① Describing your favourite sports star

وصف نجمك الرياضي المفضل

Question

- Who is your favourite sports star?

- What sport does he / she do?

- What does he / she look like?

- What can he / she do?

Answer

- My favourite sports star is

- He / She plays

- He's / She's got (quite/very) long/ short hair and ...

- He / She can jump high/score goals.

② Describing a character from a story

وصف شخصية من قصة

* للسؤال عن الرأي في شخص نستخدم الآتي:

Question

What do you think of Rami?

What is Seham like?

Answer

I think he is a brave person.

She is a clever girl.

3 Expressing likes and dislikes

Dialogue : سؤال

- * A : What does Mohamed Salah like (doing)?
 B : He likes football / playing football.
 * A : What food do you like / love?
 B : I like / love rice.
 * A : Which sport do you like?
 B : I like tennis.
 * A : What's your favourite subject?
 B : I like / love Maths. / I'm good at Maths.
 * A : Do you like stories?
 B : Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

General Exercises on Unit 3

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ziad and Ahmed are talking about Mohamed Salah.

Ziad : Hello! Ahmed.

Ahmed : Hello! Ziad. ①

Ziad : Yes, I like football.

Ahmed : ②

Ziad : Mohamed Salah. ③

Ahmed : What does he look like?

Ziad : ④

Ahmed : Why do people like him?

Ziad : ⑤

Ahmed : We should be proud of him.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. A giraffe is a animal.

- a. rich b. tall c. poor d. long

SB

2. Nader always talks nicely to people. He's very

- a. slow b. unfriendly c. unkind d. friendly

3. I need my, please. I want to read the newspaper.

- a. glass b. socks c. glasses d. gloves

4. Has Samir's dad got a ?

- a. beard b. bread c. planet d. dairy

5. What does your teacher of English look ?

- a. off b. like c. to d. about

6. How many did your team score?

- a. goals b. fans c. metres d. presents

7. your father got a moustache?

- a. Have b. Do c. Has d. Does

8. Maya tennis, but she likes basketball.

- a. likes b. don't like c. like d. doesn't like

9. Nevine loves tennis.

- a. played b. to playing c. playing d. plays

10. sport do you like?

- a. Which b. Who c. Where d. When

Language

11. Leila play basketball. She's too short.

- a. can b. could c. have d. can't

12. My friend Ali and I got straight hair.

- a. has b. have c. do d. does

13. What your maths teacher look like?

- a. do b. is c. does d. are

14. I can drive a car, but I ride a bike.

- a. can't b. can c. does d. have

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I like watch football matches.

(.....)

2. We enjoyed stay at the park yesterday.

2023 اسوان / ادفو

(.....)

3. Mary doesn't got dark hair, she has got blond hair.

(.....)

4. A: Can you telling me a story, mum?

B: Yes, I can.

5. We can live without air.

6. Amira 've got long straight hair.

7. Good students like to learning about many things.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

A blog post about a friend

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What does your friend look like?
- What is he / she like?
- What does he / she like doing?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My friend has got
- He / she is
- He / she likes doing

Paragraphs

فقرات انشائية عن موضوعات وجدت بالوحدة

1. My favourite sports star

(Lessons 1 & 2)

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He is Egyptian. He plays football very well. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt, too. He has got curly hair and a beard. He is not very tall. He scores a lot of goals. He is very kind. He gives money to poor people. He's very friendly. He always talks to his fans.

2. A character in a book or film

(Lessons 3 & 4)

My favourite book is "Oliver Twist". It's about a poor orphan boy. His mother dies when he is a baby. He lives nine years with a bad woman. He eats very little. He works hard. Thieves take him. They want him to steal. Oliver is a brave boy. He leaves the thieves and lives with a good man. In the end, he lives a happy life.

3. A blog post about myself

(Lessons 5 & 6)

Hi! My name is Ayman. I've got long, curly hair. I live in Suez with my family. I'm in prep one. I go to school on the school bus. All my teachers like me. My favourite subjects are science and art. I often play sports after school. My favourite sport is karate. At home, I like reading and watching TV.

Paragraphs

4. A blog post about a friend

(General Exercises)

My friend Ziad lives in Tanta with his family in a big house. His father is a doctor. His mother is a teacher. The family has a big car. His father always drives him to school. He is very clever at school. He always comes first in exams. He has many friends. All his friends and teachers like him. Ziad is my best friend.

5. A person in my family

"My grandfather" (Al Azhar)

My grandfather is called Tawfeek. I like him very much. He is very kind and friendly. He always gives me useful advice. He has got a long white beard.

6. My favourite book (Test)

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is my favourite book. Alice is a sensible, brave girl. She meets a lot of interesting characters. Alice often sees the White Rabbit. The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal. The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a scary person. She always shouts at people. I like that book because it is really interesting.



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- The speaker's name is
a. Sherif b. Farid c. Kamal d. Rami
- The speaker goes to the club every
a. Monday b. Friday c. Sunday d. Tuesday

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

- Fatima** : What is your favourite school subject?
Shimaa :
- Walid** :?
Mahmoud : People like Mohamed Salah because he has a nice smile.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The player was very happy when he that goal.
a. shouted b. scored c. called d. did
- My cat beautiful blue eyes.
a. has got b. get c. haven't got d. are getting
- He moves in a after the accident.
a. waterwheel b. wheel c. wheelchair d. chair
- Children shouldn't read stories.
a. scary b. busy c. funny d. clever
- How I answer this difficult question?
a. is b. am c. can d. were
- What sports do you like ?
a. watch b. to watching c. watched d. watching

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hello, everybody. My name is Ahmed. I was born in 2008. I live in Aswan. My address is 16, Oraby Street. I'm not good at English, but I'm excellent at Arabic and Science. I like writing emails, taking photos with my new camera, reading and swimming. In my free time, I help my father with his work on the farm. He grows crops and keeps animals.

A. Answer the following questions:

- What does Ahmed like doing?
- Where does Ahmed live?
- What do you think Ahmed's father's job is?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ahmed is years old.
a. four b. fourteen c. fifteen d. five
- Ahmed is bad at
a. English b. Arabic c. Maths d. Social Studies

E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

امحاح عنه قبل الاختبار

A person in your family "your grandfather"

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What is your grandfather called?
- What is he like?
- What does he look like?
- Why do you like him?
- What does he do?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My grandfather is called
- I like him very much.
- He's very kind and
- He is tall. He has got a
- He has got short hair.
- I want to be like him.
- He is a person.



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- Magid is a
a. teacher b. doctor c. farmer d. student
- He likes
a. playing b. working c. reading d. writing
- He doesn't like playing games.
a. video b. computer c. sports d. Olympic
- He likes writing
a. stories b. emails c. books d. letters

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Rania and Naglaa are talking about hobbies.

Rania : Hi, Naglaa.

Naglaa : Hi, Rania. 1.?

Rania : I like reading and sports.

Naglaa : 2.?

Rania : 3. Do you like tennis, too?

Naglaa : No, I don't, I like playing basketball.

Rania : Where do you play it?

Naglaa : 4.

Rania : Nice, I'll come with you and try it.

Naglaa : 5.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

WB

Judy is a clever girl. She's my sister. She is 13 years old. She has got long brown hair and green eyes. She's very friendly. All her friends love her. She studies hard. She always comes first at school. Her teachers say she'll be a doctor one day. Judy likes sports. She plays tennis in the club every week. She also watches football matches on TV. She likes reading books when she doesn't study. She is also a very funny person. She has got a big, friendly smile. I am very happy that she is my younger sister!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

2. What does Judy look like?

3. Why do people like Judy?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The writer his sister.

- a. hates b. likes c. helps d. reads

5. The writer is than Judy.

- a. younger b. slower c. older d. shorter

6. Judy goes to the club every

- a. day b. week c. month d. year

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brothers and I don't like TV after school.

WB

- a. watching b. watch c. watches d. watched

2. Nada always answers questions in class. She is

- a. scary b. angry c. clever d. slow

3. you use your new computer well?

- a. Does b. Can c. Have d. Has

4. My best friend got short dark hair.

WB

- a. has b. to have c. having d. have

5. How is that tree? - It's 5 metres tall.
a. big b. long c. strong d. tall
6. My sister Lina has got long hair glasses.
a. because b. and c. as d. but
7. Social studies and science are school subjects.
a. objects b. teams c. subjects d. groups
8. My father is very busy, he plays sports every day.
a. but b. from c. so d. so that
9. My grandmother gives me useful advice. She is really
a. scary b. frightening c. sensible d. dark
10. Something scary makes you feel
a. sad b. bad c. funny d. frightened

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Rabbits like eat carrots. (.....)
2. Tamer's leg is broken, so he can play football. (.....)
3. Do your father like driving cars? (.....)
4. My sister Noha have got a big smile. (.....)

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

Your favourite book

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- Who is your favourite writer?
- What is your favourite book called?
- What is it about?
- Who are the characters?
- Why do you like that book?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I love reading books by
- My favourite book is
- It's about
- The other characters are
- I like that book because

Review A

SB pages 32-33 WB pages 93-94

Key Vocabulary

scientist
family tree
million
ankle

عالم
شجرة عائلة
مليون
كاحل القدم

chart
theatre
pop music
coat

استمع إلى المقترحات

رسم بياني

مسرح

موسيقى البوب

معطف (بالطوا)

Reading

SB Page (32)

My Family By Lina

- 1 This is my aunt. Her name's Amal. She's my mum's sister. She's got long, dark curly hair and she's got glasses. Aunt Amal is very kind.



- 2 This is my uncle. His name's Nader and he's got short, dark hair. Uncle Nader is very tall! He's a teacher and he's very clever.



- 3 Aunt Amal and Uncle Nader have got two children - a son and a daughter. They're my cousins. Their names are Fares and Malak. This is Fares. He's five. He's got short, curly hair and he's very friendly.



- 4 Malak is two. She's got short, straight hair. She likes playing with her toys. She usually has a big smile. I think she's very funny.

WB Page (93)



Teacher : OK children. It's time to go home. I've got four school bags here.

Magda : Huda's bag has got flowers on it. That's her bag there.

Maya : That's Amal's bag. It has got birds on it.

Nevine : Lina's bag is red. It hasn't got any pictures on it.

Teacher : Good, but I've now got one bag with tennis balls on it. Is it your bag, Magda?

Magda : No, it isn't my bag. I think it's one of the twins' bags.

Teacher : Yes, but which twin, Azza or Dalia?

SB Page (33)

Shady I usually get up at quarter to seven on a school day.

Woman : How do you travel to school?
Shady : I always walk to school with my brother. We never go by car.

Shady : I always walk to school with my brother. We never go by

Woman : Do you like school?

Woman : Do you like school?
Shady : Yes, I do! My lessons are interesting and I see my friends. I always sit next to my best friend, Hassan, in lessons.



Woman : And what do you do after school?

Woman : And what do you do after school?
Shady : I sometimes play sport. On Mondays, I play football and on Wednesdays, I go swimming.

Woman : Do you have any other hobbies? Do you play chess?

Shady : No! I never play chess. I don't like it. But I often listen to music or watch TV.

WB Page (93)

Aya: Hi, My name's Aya. My friends have got long, straight hair but I've got short curly hair. We go to a girls' school in Cairo. My favourite school subject is Art. I love drawing. I'm not very good at it, but I want to be! We have Art at quarter to eleven, after Maths and before English. I've got one brother and one sister. My brother is very friendly and my sister is very clever.

WB Page (94)

Boy 1 : I often go to the cinema with my uncle.

Girl 1 : Do you like playing chess?

Girl 1 : I've got a long, white coat.

Boy 1 After break, we go to the hall.

Girl 1 : My uncle has got glasses and a beard.

Test

on Units

1, 2 & 3

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستمعام الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Ahmed is talking to his
a. uncle b. father c. aunt d. granddad
2. Ahmed's granddad is playing
a. tennis b. chess c. games d. football
3. Ahmed is doing his homework.
a. Arabic b. English c. science d. maths
4. Ahmed's mum and sister are taking
a. showers b. meals c. selfies d. trips

B Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

SB

Samir is speaking about himself.

Salah : Good morning, Samir.

Samir : Good morning, Salah.

Salah : 1

Samir : I've got three sisters.

Salah : 2

Samir : I like swimming.

Salah :  I go swimming every week.

Samir : We can go swimming together next week.

Salah : 4 Where will we go swimming?

Samir :

C Reading Comprehension**3** Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name's Sameh. I was born in Tanta. My family lives in a big family house. There is a big garden behind the house. My mum is called Soha. She's 33 and she works in an office. My father is called Youssry. He is 36 and he is a science teacher. I am 12 years old and I have got two brothers and a sister. My brothers are twins. They are Ahmed and Salah. They are 8 years old. My sister is Safaa and she is 3.

My father's parents live in the USA. We visit them every summer. They live on a farm and they have got horses and cows.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where do Sameh's parents live?

2. Where does Sameh's mother work?

3. How old is Youssry?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Sameh is than Safaa.

- a. younger b. older c. shorter d. weaker

5. Sameh's grandparents live in

- a. Australia b. Giza c. London d. America

6. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to

- a. Sameh's sisters b. Sameh's parents
c. Sameh's grandparents d. Samah's brothers

D Vocabulary and Structure**4** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I wore a heavy because it was really cold.

- a. cover b. coat c. canoe d. paper

2. I never listen music.

- a. to b. at c. of d. by

3. I go swimming a week.

- a. two b. one c. three d. twice

4. A: Is that your car? B: Yes, it's theirs.

- a. parents' b. parent's c. parents d. parent

5. French is an easy school

- a. game b. subject c. timetable d. sport

6. The book belongs to the girl. It's

- a. she b. her c. hers d. his

7. We sometimes Computer Studies at school.

- a. has b. have c. having d. to have

8. I like films. They are really exciting.

- a. adventure b. chart c. feature d. character

9. He does some work in a hospital.

- a. useless b. house c. voluntary d. dirty

10. I rang the, but no one was in the house.

- a. bill b. ball c. boat d. bell

4 Read and correct the underlined words

1. Ali room is bigger than mine.

(.....)

2. My sister doesn't likes milk.

(.....)

3. This is mine school bag.

(.....)

4. This man is strong. He can't carry this box.

(.....)

E Writing**6** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

Your family

We're using technology!

Objectives

Reading:

An A text message conversation; a text about hobbies

Writing:

A paragraph and a poster about online safety

Listening:

A description of technology in a classroom; a phone call

Speaking:

Describing the technology in your classroom; a guessing game; giving instructions

Language:

There is / There are; the present continuous

Life Skills:

Problem solving: resilience

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 34-37 WB pages 95-96

Key Vocabulary

laptop computer
tablet
mobile phone
mouse (mouses)

كمبيوتر محمول
كمبيوتر لوحي
هاتف محمول
فأرة الكمبيوتر (ماوس)

MP3 player
phone charger
3D printer
whiteboard

استمع إلى المفردات



مشغل ملفات الصوت
شاحن الهاتف
طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد
سبورة بيضاء

Verbs & Nouns

take a selfie

يلتقط صورة سيلفي

make a video call

يجري مكالمة فيديو

make a model

يصنع نموذج

look at a website

يتصفح موقع الإنترنت

send (a photo / a text message)

يرسل (صورة / رسالة نصية)

click on an icon

ينقر على الأيقونة «بالموس»

tap (ped) on an icon

يضغط على أيقونة «بالإصبع»

print (ed) the homework

يطبع الواجب المنزلي

charge (d) the phone

يشحن الهاتف

design (ed) an icon

يصمم أيقونة

do Computer Studies homework

يعمل واجب الحاسب الآلي



Vocabulary

technology

التكنولوجيا

picture

صورة (طبيعية أو مرسومة)

objects

أشياء

information

معلومات

chess piece

قطعة شطرنج

planet

كوكب

chair

كرسي

classmate

زميل الفصل

plastic model

نموذج بلاستيكي

click (ed) (n)

ينقر على زر / نقرة (على الماوس)

Adverbs of place



next to بجوار



behind خلف



in front of أمام



under تحت



near قريب من

Expressions & Prepositions

What time...? = When...?

في أي وقت...؟ متى...؟

It's quite easy to use.

إنه سهل الاستخدام تمامًا

I don't know why....

لأنني أعرف لماذا...

at the moment

look for

charge.... with

on the phone

في هذه اللحظة

يبحث عن

يشحن... باستخدام

على الهاتف

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present

sit down

يجلس

send

يرسل

make

يصنع

do

يفعل

Past simple

sat down

sent

made

did

Past Participle

sat down

sent

made

done

Word	Meaning	Opposite
online	عبر الإنترنت / متصل بالإنترنت	offline
modem	جهاز	old / ancient
	new	بدون الإنترنت
		قديم

Definitions

charge

يشحن

increase⁽¹⁾ the power⁽²⁾ of a battery⁽³⁾

click

ينقر

press⁽⁴⁾ a mouse or icon to make something happen on a computer

icon

أيقونة

a small picture on a computer screen⁽⁵⁾

MP3 player

مشغل ملفات الصوت

a machine⁽⁶⁾ that can play music

online

عبر الإنترنت

using the internet

3D printer

طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد

a machine that can print documents in 3D⁽⁷⁾ from a computer

selfie

صورة سيلفي

a photo you take of yourself

tablet

كمبيوتر لوحي

a flat, mobile⁽⁸⁾ computer that is smaller than a laptop computer

tap

يضغط برفق

touch quickly with your finger

website

موقع على الإنترنت

an internet page with information about something

phone charger

شاحن الهاتف

you use a phone charger to increase the battery power of a mobile phone

whiteboard

سبورة بيضاء

a classroom board that is sometimes connected⁽⁹⁾ to a computer

Language Notes

1 charge - recharge - charger

• charge (d) يشحن / يمد بالطاقة (بطارية / جهاز)

Ex. You need to charge your new mobile phone battery now.

• recharge (d) يعيد شحن (بطارية / جهاز)

Ex. You need to recharge your mobile phone. The battery is only 2%.

• charger (n) شاحن (جهاز لشحن بطارية / جهاز)

Ex. He's charging his phone with a phone charger.

2 a or an

- تستخدم أداة النكرة (an) أمام بعض الأسماء التي تبدأ بحرف ساكن لأنها تبدأ بصوت متحرك، ومن أمثلة هذه الكلمات:

SMS / MP3 player

Ex. I bought an MP3 player last week.

Ex. When you get home, send me an SMS.

3 click - tap

• click (ed) (on) ينقر (زر فأرة الكمبيوتر / أيقونة)

Ex. Click twice on the mouse to open this image.

Ex. I clicked on the icon to listen to the song.

• tap (ped) (on) يضغط برفق (على شاشة / أيقونة)

Ex. Tap the messages icon to start writing a message.

Ex. I tapped on the icon many times but the mobile didn't work.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I forgot the for my mobile phone at home.
a. charge b. charger c. laptop d. website
- You must your mobile phone battery before you leave.
a. listen b. type c. choose d. recharge
- I will send my dad SMS tomorrow.
a. an b. a c. many d. much
- You can choose the photo you want by on it.
a. checking b. listening c. clicking d. making

Reading

SB Page (34)

I am Ziad and this is a picture of my classroom. We often use tablets in school. There are two laptop computers in the classroom, too. One laptop has got a mouse. I don't know why it's called a mouse. Do you know? And there's a printer, too.

My friend, Omar, is printing his homework. I have got a mobile phone, but it's in my bag - we don't use our phones in the classroom. Mr Osman has got a phone on his desk. He's charging his phone with a phone charger. And he's got a new MP3 player, it's small and blue. Can you see it?



استمع إلى النص



- ١- صورة
- ٢- حجرة الفصل
- ٣- أيضاً
- ٤- يُسمى
- ٥- يطبع
- ٦- يشحن
- ٧- شاحن هاتف
- ٨- مشغل ملفات الصوت

SB Page (36)

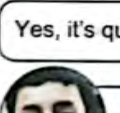


Hi, Granddad. It's Adam. What are you doing?

I'm playing chess online. I'm winning at the moment!



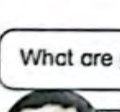
Are you using your new laptop?



Yes, it's quite easy to use. What are you doing?



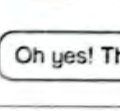
I'm doing my computer studies homework. I'm looking at websites for information about 3D printers.



What are your mum and Alia doing?



They're taking selfies. I'm sending you one of their photos now.



Oh yes! That's a great photo.

- ١- جد
- ٢- الشطرنج
- ٣- عبر الإنترنت
- ٤- مادة الحاسب الآلي
- ٥- مواقع على الإنترنت
- ٦- معلومات
- ٧- طابعات ثلاثية الأبعاد
- ٨- صور سيلفي
- ٩- صور

Audioscript

SB Page (35)

There's a laptop computer on the table. Under the table there's a printer. There isn't an MP3 player, but there are two mobile phones near the laptop. The laptop has got a mouse.



- ١- كمبيوتر محمول
- ٢- تحت
- ٣- طابعة
- ٤- مشغل ملفات الصوت
- ٥- هواتف محمولة
- ٦- بالقرب من
- ٧- فأرة الكمبيوتر

Videoscript

SB Page (36)

Narrator: We use technology every day. Modern technology is very different from technology in the past. The ancient Egyptians used their own forms of technology to do a lot of different things. For example, ancient Egypt was the first civilization to use calendars. This is a calendar in the Temple of Karnak in Luxor. Today, we can use our phones to find our way. The ancient Egyptians used astronomy to find their way in the desert and at sea. Astronomy is the study of stars and planets. How do you tell the time? Have you got a phone.. or a watch?

The ancient Egyptians had the first clocks. They were called sundials, like this one in Alexandria. They used the sun to tell the time.

Hieroglyphics is the oldest writing in the world. The ancient Egyptians used hieroglyphics to communicate.

And of course, the ancient Egyptians used a plant called papyrus to make the first kind of paper.

This is papyrus. It grows along the River Nile. Today, we use different technology to the ancient Egyptians. This woman is writing a text message on her phone. And this man is writing a story. He is not using paper at all!

Today, we have calendars on our phones, computers and tablets. Today's technology is different, but we can thank the ancient Egyptians for starting the ideas for our technology too.

- ١- حديث
- ٢- المصريون القدماء
- ٣- حضارة
- ٤- نتيجة تقويم
- ٥- علم الفلك
- ٦- الكواكب
- ٧- مزولة ساعة شمسية
- ٨- اللغة
- ٩- الهيرغليفية
- ١٠- نبات البردي
- ١١- أفكار

C some / any

بعض / أي

نستخدم **some** بمعنى «بعض» في الجملة المثبتة أمام الاسم الذي يعد [الجمع] والذي لا يعد.

Ex. She bought **some** pens / meat.

نستخدم **any** بمعنى «أي» في الجملة المنفية وفي السؤال مع الاسم الذي يعد [الجمع] والذي لا يعد.

Ex. I don't have **any** apples / rice.

Ex. Did you buy **any** pens / pasta?

D There is / isn't
There are / aren't

يوجد / لا يوجد [المفرد]
يوجد / لا يوجد [الجمع]

نستخدم **There is / isn't** مع الأسماء التي تعد (المفردة) والأسماء التي لا تعد.

Ex. There is a printer / water on the table.

Ex. There isn't a phone charger / water on the table.

نستخدم **There are / aren't** مع الأسماء التي تعد [الجمع].

Ex. There are two laptops on the table.

Ex. There aren't tablets on the table.

• للاستفهام نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

هل يوجد...؟ [للمفرد] Is there...?
هل يوجد...؟ [للجمع] Are there...?

Ex. Is there any water on the table?

Ex. Are there any tablets on the desk?

Answer

Yes, there is / are.

No, there isn't / aren't.



Countable / Uncountable nouns

• سيتم شرح الأسماء التي تعد والتي لا تعد.

في Unit 6 بالتفصيل.

Check ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- there many cars in the street?
a. Is b. Do c. Does d. Are
- There any rice in the kitchen.
a. don't b. aren't c. isn't d. doesn't
- My neighbour asked me for bread.
a. some b. a c. any d. an

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- There are a lot of sugar in that juice. ()
- Did Ali get some books from the bookshop? ()
- Mona brought any cheese from the kitchen. ()

2) The present continuous tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

Form

I am
He / She / It اسم مفرد is
We / They / You اسم جمع are
V - ing

Ex. I am playing football now.

Ex. Look! He is reading a book.

Usage

الاستخدام

1- يستخدم للتعبير عن فعل يحدث الآن (في وقت الكلام).

Ex. Sara is watching TV now.

2- يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة تستغرق فترة من الوقت ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام.

Ex. He is learning German.

3- يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث مرتب لها من قبل ستحدث في المستقبل.

Ex. Tomorrow, my dad is taking the bus to Giza.

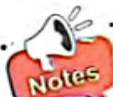
4- يستخدم لوصف صورة.

Ex. My little sister is smiling in this photo.

Keywords

الكلمات الدالة

Look!	انظر!	Watch out!	احترس!	still	ما زال
Listen!	استمع!	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة	now	الآن
Look out!	احترس	at present	في الوقت الحاضر		



1- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك نضع الحرف الساكن

الآخر عند إضافة (ing) [مع بعض الأفعال ذو المقطع والواحد]:

sit → sitting tap → tapping

2- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) غير منطوق ي حذف (e) ثم نضيف (ing) إلى الفعل:

use → using make → making

3- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) منطوق لا تحذف عند إضافة (ing):

see → seeing be → being

4- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (y) تحول إلى (i) عند إضافة (ing):

lie → lying die → dying

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- She's you a photo now.
a. send b. sends c. sent d. sending **WB**
- A: Is there teacher?
a. any b. a c. an d. some **WB**
- Look! My grandma a book.
a. read b. will read c. have read d. is reading **WB**
- They at websites for information.
a. 's looking b. 's looked c. 're looking d. looking **WB**
- Soha a selfie at the moment.
a. taking b. takes c. is taking d. take **WB**
- A: Is he glasses? B: Yes, he is.
a. wear b. wearing c. wears d. to wear **WB**
- There any tablets in my classroom.
a. aren't b. is c. isn't d. are **WB**
- there any printers in your school?
a. Is b. Am c. Are d. Do **WB**
- There is milk in the fridge.
a. some b. any c. a lot d. a **WB**
- There a lot of water on the floor of the bathroom.
a. has b. are c. were d. is **WB**

Bit by Bit Exercises

- George his exercises now.
a. is doing b. doing c. does d. was doing
- There aren't any in the kitchen.
a. water b. tomatoes c. juice d. milk
- aren't any doctors in my family.
a. Here b. Which c. What d. There
- Listen! A nice singer on the radio.
a. sang b. is singing c. sing d. would sing
- There rice plates on the table for all of us.
a. is b. have c. are d. has
- there anybody at home?
a. Is b. Are c. Have d. Do

Lessons 1 & 2

2 Read and correct the underlined words:
SB, WB & Exams

- There are an MP3 player behind the laptop. **WB** (.....)
- I'm play chess online now. **WB** (.....)
- Are there some tomatoes in the fridge? **WB** (.....)
- My mother is cook lunch now. **WB** (.....)
- He study his lessons now. **WB** (.....)
- My brother are playing football now. **WB** (.....)
- Ali read his English book at the moment. **WB** (.....)
- There is any tablets on the students' desks. **WB** (.....)
- They is watching TV in their room. **WB** (.....)
- Look! Adel was coming over there. **WB** (.....)
- Is there any chairs in the room? **WB** (.....)
- Look! Ahmed and Ali eat. **WB** (.....)
- There isn't any computers in my classroom. **WB** (.....)

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Medhat and his mother are talking about his classroom.

- Mother : Welcome back, Medhat. How is your new school?
Medhat : 1 All students are friendly.
Mother : How is your classroom?
Medhat : 2
Mother : Good! 3
Medhat : Yes, there are two computers.
Mother : 4
Medhat : No, there isn't a laptop.
Mother : Can you print papers in the classroom?
Medhat : 5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

- You can look at websites
a. online b. in line c. line d. outline
- I bought a new that can play music easily.
a. printer b. charger c. MP3 player d. mouse

3. I can't use my tablet. I need to it.
 a. wave b. charge c. print d. finish
 4. When the battery of the mobile is low, I can use the
 a. cook b. printer c. charger d. keyboard
 5. A lot of people are fond of selfies.
 a. clicking b. taking c. buying d. tapping

Language

6. There any laptops on the desk.
 a. aren't b. is c. isn't d. have
 7. She is an apple now.
 a. eaten b. eats c. eating d. ate
 8. Nadia is sitting next her best friend in the classroom.
 a. at b. to c. on d. under
 9. Marwa a book now.
 a. is reading b. reads c. reading d. read
 10. The police still looking for the thief.
 a. is b. are c. was d. have

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She can't talk to you now because she does her homework.
 2. My sister makes lunch now.
 3. Look! Samy run fast.
 4. Are there any sugar in the kitchen?
 5. Watch out! A car comes!
 6. I put any books on that shelf.
 7. Is there some water in the fridge?

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

Your classroom

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الاسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة المنشائية:

- Where is your classroom?
 - Do you have many classmates?
 - Are there any computers in your classroom?

- Do you have tablets in your classroom?
 - Do you like your classroom? Why? Why not?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My classroom is in
 - I have many classmates in
 - We have three
 - We have two in
 - I like my classroom because

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 38 - 40 WB pages 97 - 98

Key Vocabulary

nature
hobbyالطبيعة
هواية

video call

break (n) (broke)

استمع إلى المفردات

مكالمة فيديو

فترة راحة (مفسدة) / يكسر

Vocabulary

conversation

eagle

outside (adv/adj)

video games

school uniform

dancer

insect

محادثة

dictionary

similar

sunny

wave (d)

mime (d)

guess (ed)

قاموس

متشابه

شمس

يلوح بيده

يمثل بالإشارة

يخمن

Expressions & Prepositions

take notes

have a hobby

all around us

need help

give advice

fly a kite

The programme is on

aged 13

make a video call

يُدوّن ملاحظات

لديه هواية

حولنا

يحتاج للمساعدة

يعطي نصيحة

يظهر طائرة ورقية

البرنامج معروض

يبلغ من العمر 13 عامًا

يجري اتصال فيديو

write with a pen

put his hand up

on the laptop

smile at

at school

at break / lunchtime

at home

يكتب بقلم

يرفع يده

على اللاب توب

يتسّمّل

في المدرسة

في وقت الراحة / وقت الغداء

بالمنازل

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present

give

wear

bring

يعطي

يرتدي

يُحضّر

Past simple

gave

wore

brought

Past Participle

given

worn

brought

Definitions

nature

الطبيعة

the plants, animals, land, sea, etc. around us

video call

مكالمة فيديو

a way to talk to and see people online

Language Notes

1) like - would ('d) like

• like + n / V-ing/ to + inf. يحب

Ex. I like films.

Ex. I like watching films.

Ex. I like to watch films.

• would ('d) like + (to + inf. /n)

• يرغب في / يود = want + (to + inf. /n)

Ex. Would you like some tea?

Ex. I'd like to use a 3D printer.

2) a lot of - lots of

تستخدمان عادة في الإثبات مع الأسماء التي تُعد في صيغة الجمع وكذلك أمام الأسماء التي لا تُعد.

Ex. There are a lot of / lots of flowers and insects in the park.

Ex. Sarah bought a lot of / lots of sugar.

3) "always" with the present continuous

يمكن أن نستخدم always مع زمن المضارع المستمر لتعبير عن الشكوى من تكرار عمل شيء.

Ex. My sisters are always taking selfies. That's annoying.

4) break - brake

• break (n)(v. broke/broken) فترة راحة / يكسر

Ex. Let's have a break.

Ex. Take an egg and break it into the pan.

• brake فرامل

Ex. I need to fix the brakes of my bike.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- There are of books on my desk.
a. a lot b. a lots c. much d. any
- We'd like out in the evening.
a. to going b. goes c. going d. to go
- I don't like in the house.
a. be b. being c. am d. to being
- Omnia is really careless. She the door open.
a. always leave b. always leaving c. is always leaving d. is always leaves
- We take one during the school day at school.
a. breck b. brake c. park d. bark

Audioscript

SB Page (38)

استمع إلى النصوص



- Randa : Hi, Sherifa, It's Randa.
 Sherifa : Oh, hello Randa. Where are you? Are you at home?
 Randa : Yes, and Uncle Yasser's here with our cousins⁽¹⁾ Ola, Reem and Samira.
 Sherifa : What's mum doing?
 Randa : She's looking at a website⁽²⁾. She wants to make a cake.
 Sherifa : Yum! Mum makes the best cakes. Is she using the tablet⁽³⁾?
 Randa : No, she isn't. She's using the laptop. Uncle Yasser's using the tablet. He's writing an email⁽⁴⁾.
 Sherifa : Is grandmother watching TV?
 Randa : Yes, she is. It's her favourite programme⁽⁵⁾ on now.
 Sherifa : Of course⁽⁶⁾. What're Ola and Samira doing?
 Randa : They're taking selfies in the garden.
 Sherifa : Again⁽⁷⁾? They're always taking selfies!
 Randa : I know. Reem isn't taking a selfie; she's listening to music on her MP3 player.
 Sherifa : She's a good dancer⁽⁸⁾! What are you doing, Randa?
 Randa : I'm talking to you!
 Sherifa : Oh yes!

- ١- أبناء العم/الخال
- ٢- موقع على الإنترنت
- ٣- كمبيوتر لوحى
- ٤- رسالة بريد إلكترونى
- ٥- برنامج
- ٦- بالطبع
- ٧- مرة أخرى
- ٨- راقصة

WB Page (97)

- Judy : Hi, Leila. Where are you?
 Leila : Hi, Judy. I'm in the park with my family.
 Judy : What are you doing there?
 Leila : I'm sitting under a tree. It's very sunny⁽¹⁾.
 Judy : Are your brothers sitting too?
 Leila : No, they aren't. They're playing football.
 Judy : Is your dad playing football with them?
 Leila : No, he isn't. He's not here. He's working today. But my Uncle Hassan is playing football!
 Judy : What's your mother doing?
 Leila : Er, wait... here she is. She's bringing⁽²⁾ me a drink of water. Thanks⁽³⁾, Mum!

- ١- مشمس
- ٢- يُحضّر
- ٣- شكرًا

Reading

SB Page (39)

Soha is not making a video call⁽¹⁾ but she is talking to her friend. Amira is not using any technology.

Fatma has got long, curly hair⁽²⁾. She is writing. Hala is using her mobile phone to send a text message⁽³⁾. Leila is not using a mobile phone. She is using a tablet. Mona is smiling at her phone! She is taking a selfie.

- ١- اتصال فيديو
٢- شعر مجعد
٣- رسالة نصية

SB Page (40)

I love technology! My favourite hobby⁽¹⁾ is playing video games⁽²⁾. I usually play them on my laptop, but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone.

Can you guess⁽³⁾ my favourite lesson at school? Yes, it is computer studies! At break⁽⁴⁾ and lunchtime⁽⁵⁾ I stay in the classroom and I look at video game websites on my phone.

Wael, age 12

I love nature⁽⁶⁾. I like walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects⁽⁷⁾ all around⁽⁸⁾ us. I don't like being in the house; I like being in the garden⁽⁹⁾ and looking at the sky⁽¹⁰⁾. At school, I always go outside⁽¹¹⁾ at break. I go when it's very hot or cold!

I've got a mobile phone. I don't send text messages or make video calls on my phone, but I take photos of flowers.

Mazin, age 13

Say it correctly

* guess

لا ينطق حرف ال (u) في هذه الكلمة



- ١- هواية
٢- ألعاب الفيديو
٣- يخمن
٤- وقت الراحة (فصحة)
٥- وقت الغداء
٦- الطبيعة
٧- حشرات
٨- حول
٩- حديقة
١٠- السماء
١١- للخارج



WB Page (98)

In this picture, there is a big park. There are lots of flowers and insects and there is a big tree. A girl is sitting under the tree. Her mother is taking a photo of her. Her father is not sitting under the tree. He is flying a kite! The girl's brothers are playing tennis.

Exercises

on Vocabulary

Lessons 3 & 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- There are of flowers and insects in the park.
a. much b. lot c. a lots d. lots
- The boy is a kite in the park.
a. turning b. boiling c. flying d. adding
- Playing chess is one of my favourite
a. hobbies b. colours c. subjects d. ideas
- He loves He likes watching birds and trees.
a. history b. maths c. football d. nature
- When you leave someone, you can goodbye to them.
a. take b. wave c. put d. get

Bit by Bit Exercises

- My father always gives me good
a. advise b. device c. advice d. voice
- It's hot in here; I'll go walking
a. side b. inside c. beside d. outside
- We have lunch and talk at at school.
a. break b. class c. park d. street
- Ants and bees are
a. insects b. birds c. gardens d. posters
- A call is a way to talk to and see people online.
a. radio b. video c. game d. telephone
- I like to see an elephant one day.
a. 're b. 've c. 'd d. 'm
- Can you the meaning of this new word?
a. turn b. guess c. break d. stay
- I like watching the trees, animals and insects all us.
a. alive b. away c. without d. around
- Mr Omar asked us to put our hands if we know the answer.
a. at b. over c. up d. on
- We should always smile each other.
a. for b. at c. in d. up

Bit by Bit Exercises

4. Nadeen is sending letters at present; she is writing emails. (.....)
5. A: What is you writing? B: I'm writing a new story. (.....)
6. He is walking at present. He is really ill. (.....)
7. A: Do you waiting for Hossam? B: Yes, I'm. (.....)

General Exercises

on Lessons 3 & 4



WB

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Judy is talking to Leila on the phone.

Judy : Hi Leila. Where are you?

Leila : Hi Judy. I'm in the park with my family.

Judy : 1.....?

Leila : I'm sitting under a tree. It's very sunny.

Judy : 2.....?

Leila : No, they aren't. 3.....?

Judy : Is your dad playing football with them?

Leila : 4..... He's not here. He's working today.

Judy : What is your mum doing?

Leila : 5.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Hana loves birds, trees, flowers etc. She loves

a. technology b. insects c. food d. nature

2. My favourite is playing chess.

a. hobby b. subject c. size d. colour

3. At, I play games with my friends in the playground.

a. nature b. break c. programme d. day

4. Salma is making a video now.

a. phone b. cell c. call d. picture

5. I have two brothers, three and nine.

a. aged b. old c. age d. year

Lessons 3 & 4

6. During the test, the teacher asked us to write a pen not a pencil.
- a. on b. in c. of d. with
7. I like to be a doctor in the future.
- a. 'm b. 've c. 're d. 'd

Language

8. the boys doing well at school?
- a. Do b. Are c. Will d. Is
9. I'm not these days.
- a. working b. worked c. work d. to work
10. Tarek at the moment, he's sleeping.
- a. is studying b. studies c. doesn't study
- c. isn't studying
11. What, Soha?
- a. you are writing b. are you writing
- c. do you writing d. are you write
12. A: Are you going on a trip today? B: Yes, I
- a. am b. do c. was d. will

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Omar is using his computer yesterday. (.....)
2. Where do you practising sport these days? (.....)
3. Mona and Hadeer isn't sitting in the classroom at the moment. (.....)
4. Were the kids playing quietly in the garden now? (.....)
5. How is your brother spends his time these days? (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(محبب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

Which do you like more, nature or technology?

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- Do you like nature? Why / Why not? - Do your friends like nature?
- Do you like technology? Why / Why not? - Do your friends like technology?
- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- I like nature because - Most of my friends like
- I like technology because - A lot of my friends like

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 41-42 WB pages 99-100

Key Vocabulary

technology
instructions
password
secret

التكنولوجيا
تعليمات
كلمة المرور
سري / سرى

safe
turn (ed) on
boil (ed)

استمع إلى المفردات

أمن

يشغل (جهاز)

يغلي «للماء»

Vocabulary

SEND icon
message icon
kettle
popular drink
personal
parent
sugar

أيقونة «إرسال»
أيقونة الرسائل
غلاية
مشروب شعبي (محبوب)
شخصي
أحد الوالدين
سكر

the rest
poster
heading
colourful
font
tea bag

البقية
ملصق
عنوان (رئيسي)
زاهي الألوان
نوع الخط (بونت)
كيس شاي

Expressions & Prepositions

make friends with
stay safe
keep secret
answer a phone call
look interesting
come home
go online

يكون صداقات مع
يبقى آمناً
يحافظ على... سري
يرد على مكالمة تليفونية
يبدو شيقاً
يأتي للمنزل
يتصل بالإنترنت

Say hello!
ask for help
worried about
take out
go onto a website

قل مرحباً!
بطلب المساعدة
قلق بشأن
يُخرج
يدخل على موقع على الإنترنت

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
tell	يخبر	told	told
say	يقول	said	said
put	يضع	put	put
keep	يحافظ على	kept	kept

Word

Meaning

Opposite

colourful	ملون	bright	plain	شاحب
turn on	يشغل	switch on	turn off	يطفىء

Definitions

boil

يغلي

if you boil water, it is very hot and bubbles

١- يخرج فقاعات

٢- حاص

٣- آلة / ماكينة

password

كلمة المرور

a special word or letters that you write before you can use a computer or website

secret

سر

something that only you or a few people know

turn on

يشغل (جهاز)

start a machine

technology

التكنولوجيا

computers and mobile phones are examples of this

Language Notes

home

- go home (يبدون حرف جر) مع بعض الأفعال
يذهب للمنزل
 - come back home = return يعود للمنزل / للوطن
 - arrive home يصل للمنزل
- Ex. My father arrives home/ comes back home from work at 3:00.

Reading

SB Page (41)

استمع إلى النصوص

How to send a text message:

First, tap the messages icon. Tap the name of the person. Write your text message. Then tap the SEND icon.

How to make a video call:

- Turn your tablet on.
- Tap the name of the person.
- Say Hello!



How to make a cup of tea:

First, put some water in a kettle. Boil the water. Put the hot water in a cup with a tea bag. Take out the tea bag. Then, drink the tea.

Stay safe when you use technology

- Keep your password **secret**!
- Ask for help from a parent or teacher.
- Tell a parent or teacher if you are worried about something.
- Don't **make friends** with people you don't know online.
- Don't tell people your personal information (e.g. telephone number).
- Don't send photos to people you don't know.
- Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know.



١- سرّي
٢- يكون صداقات

Mum : Come here, please Ali.

Ali : Yes, Mum. What is it?

Mum : Stop playing on your phone and listen to me. I need you to do something.

Ali : Yes, OK. What do you want me to do?

Mum : Please go to the shop, buy some sugar, take it to your grandmother's house, help her make a cake and then send me a text message when you want to come home.



Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. A/An is something you do not want to tell people.
a. nature b. break c. secret d. insect
2. Computers and mobile phones are examples of
a. technology b. passwords c. nature d. video games
3. You should keep your secret when you use technology.
a. nature b. password c. break d. advice
4. It's important to stay online.
a. safe b. worried c. angry d. save
5. Don't friends with bad people.
a. give b. buy c. make d. play

كفر الشيخ / فليس 2022

السيوط / ملفوظ 3202

السيوط - ملفوظ 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. Good students follow their teachers'
a. structures b. instructions c. icons d. passwords
7. Please, turn the computer I want to use the internet.
a. on b. of c. off d. at
8. We use to boil water for tea.
a. castles b. bags c. kites d. kettles
9. I don't like much in my coffee, thanks.
a. shoe b. sugar c. soil d. star
10. There is a about the school instructions on the wall.
a. charger b. printer c. player d. poster
11. When water is very hot, it
a. comes b. boils c. stays d. makes
12. There are some tea on the table. You can make tea.
a. bags b. backs c. poems d. breaks
13. If you go this website, you'll find the information which you need.
a. at b. about c. onto d. for

Language

Imperative

صيغة الأمر

صيغة الأمر المثبت

صيغة الأمر المنفى

→ باقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل. Inf.

→ باقي الجملة + Don't + inf.

→ باقي الجملة + Never + inf.



Uses of imperative

استخدامات صيغة الأمر

Giving orders إعطاء أوامر

- إيجابيات** Do your homework.
نفي Don't / Never talk in class.

Giving instructions إعطاء تعليمات

- إيجابيات** Put some water in a kettle.
نفي Don't / Never tell people your personal information.

Giving advice إعطاء نصيحة

- إيجابيات** Keep your password secret.
نفي Don't / Never send photos to people you don't know.



Ex. Be polite to other people.

Ex. Don't be late for school.

٢- إذا بدأت الجملة بفعل أمر فإن الفعل المعطوف عليه يكون أمر أيضاً:

Ex. Study hard and sleep early, Ahmed.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- the message icon to send a text message. **SB**
a. Doesn't tap b. Tapping c. To tap d. Tap
- friends with people you don't know to keep safe online. **SB**
a. Don't make b. Make c. Makes d. To make
- a few minutes preparing yourself for exercise. **SB**
a. Spends b. Spend c. Spending d. Spent

Bit by Bit Exercises

- Always polite to your friends.
a. being b. be c. to be d. been

Lessons 5 & 6

- leave your bag while you're playing at break.
a. Didn't b. Doesn't c. Don't d. Does
- speak loudly in the library.
a. Always b. Often c. Do d. Never
- keep your food in a fridge.
a. Never b. Always c. Not d. Didn't
- left and right before crossing a street.
a. To look b. Looking c. Look d. Looks

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB & Exams

- Don't tell your parent or teacher if you are worried about something. **SB**
(.....)
- To put the hot water in a cup with a tea bag. **WB** (.....)
- Washing your hands before and after meals. **WB** (.....)
- Doesn't sleep late at night. **WB** (.....)

Bit by Bit Exercises

- Being polite with your neighbours, Hani. (.....)
- Always touch a hot pan. (.....)

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Complete the following dialogue:

WB

Ali and his mum are talking.

Mum : Ali!

Ali : Yes, Mum.

Mum : Come here, please.

Ali : Yes, Mum. 1.....?

Mum : 2.....?

Ali : Yes, OK. What do you want me to do?

Mum : 3.....?

Ali : OK, Mum. I'll take these things to my grandmother. 4.....?

Mum : No, thanks. 5.....?

Ali : OK, Mum. I won't be late.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Dad goes after he finishes work.
a. to home b. for home c. home d. in home
2. When I meet my friends, I hello!
a. tell b. say c. ask d. speak
3. A is a word or number you use to go onto a website.
a. message b. next c. keyword d. password
4. You should safe when you go online.
a. stand b. stop c. stay d. stick
5. The owner of the factory always gives the workers
a. functions b. instructions c. pollution d. structures

Language

6. say bad things to other people.
a. Never b. Doesn't c. Not d. Always
7. My father said to me, "..... careful when you cross the road."
a. Being b. Be c. To be d. Been

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. First putting some water in the kettle. (الدفعلية / بنقاس 2023)
2. First, boils the water. (إدارة دمناط 2022)
3. Not touch the broken glass, it's dangerous. (.....)
4. Always having a shower after doing exercises. (.....)

Review

Vocabulary

technology	التكنولوجيا	mobile phone	هاتف جوال	MP3 player	مشغل ملفات الصوت
tablet	كمبيوتر لوحي	3D printer	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	secret (adj/n)	سري / سر
phone charger	شاحن الهاتف	whiteboard	سبورة بيضاء	boil (ed)	يغلي / للماء
nature	الطبيعة	instructions	تعليمات	turn (ed) on	يشغل (جهاز)
hobby	هواية	safe	آمن	break (n) (ed)	فترة راحة / يكسر
password	كلمة المرور	laptop computer	كمبيوتر محمول		
mouse (mouses)	فأرة الكمبيوتر (ماوس)	video call	مكالمة فيديو		

Verbs & nouns

take a selfie	يلتقط صورة سيلفي	tap on an icon	يضغط على أيقونة «بالإصبع»
make a video call	يجري مكالمة فيديو	print the homework	يطبع الواجب المنزلي
make a model	يصنع نموذج	charge the phone	يشحن الهاتف
look at a website	يتصفح موقع الإنترنت	design an icon	يصمم أيقونة
send (a photo / a text message)	يرسل (صورة / رسالة نصية)	do Computer Studies homework	يعمل واجب الحاسب الآلي
click on an icon	ينقر على أيقونة «بالموس»		

Language

1 There is / There are

	للمفرد	للمجمع
إثبات	There is..... مع الأسماء التي تعد المفرد / الأسماء التي لا تعد	There are..... مع الأسماء التي تعد الجمع
نفي	There isn't	There aren't
استفهام	Is there?	Are there?

EX. There is a tablet / some juice on the table.

EX. There are books on the desk.

2 The present continuous tense

Subject	I am + v-ing	I / We / They / You / (اسم جمع) + are + v-ing	He / She / It / (اسم مفرد) + is + v-ing
إثبات	am / are + V-ing.		is + V-ing.
نفي	am / are + not + V-ing.		is + not + V-ing.
استفهام	Am / Are + فاعل + V-ing....?		Is + فاعل + V-ing....?
Keywords	Look! / Listen! / now / at present / at the moment / Look out! / watch out!		
EX	I'm watching TV now.		
EX	She isn't doing sports at present.		

3 Imperative

	التكوين	الاستخدام
إثبات	Inf. بمصدر الفعل.	١- إعطاء الأوامر: EX. Keep quiet in class. EX. Don't make noise in the library.
نفي	Don't / Never + inf.	٢- إعطاء تعليمات: EX. Read the question, then answer it. EX. Don't / Never take the medicine before meals. ٣- إعطاء نصيحة: EX. Keep safe online. EX. Don't / Never tell anyone your password.

General Exercises on Unit 4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

WB

Fady is going shopping.

Fady : Hi! Emad.

Emad : Hi, Fady. 1

Fady : I'm going to the Mall of Arabia.

Emad : Why?

Fady : 2

Emad : Great! 3

Fady : No, there aren't any mobile phones there.

Emad : Where can I buy a good mobile phone?

Fady : 4

Emad : OK. I'll go to Masr Mall tomorrow. 5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

- I'd like to a selfie in front of the river.
a. make b. do c. eat d. take
- Reading and painting are my favourite
a. hobbies b. languages c. subjects d. sports
- I write text to my friend when I can't meet him.
a. passages b. calls c. pieces d. messages
- I don't give my passwords to anyone. They're
a. cheap b. far c. secret d. fast
- We take a to eat and play between lessons.
a. break b. photo c. selfie d. message
- The question is too difficult; I'll ask my teacher help.
a. on b. about c. for d. of
- You need to use a 3D to make that model.
a. charger b. painter c. mouse d. printer
- Our school gave us some to keep us safe during the break.
a. sports b. instructions c. hobbies d. games
- You need to this icon to make a phone call.
a. wave b. call c. talk d. tap

Language

- there an MP3 player on the desk?
a. Are b. Is c. Have d. Were
- They the streets at present.
a. clean b. will clean c. are cleaning d. cleaned
- write on the walls. Keep them clean.
a. Usually b. Sometimes c. Always d. Never
- Listen! Someone outside.
a. is shouting b. shouting c. are shouting d. shout
- We sitting in the garden of our house at the moment.
a. 'm b. 's c. 've d. 're

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Taking out the tea bag.
2. Look! Sara have taking a photo in the garden.
3. My father cleans his car at the moment.
4. He is drives the car now.
5. Is they doing the maths homework now?
6. Is there any coins in your bag?
7. There are any pencils in my bag.

WB

الأسئلة / مسلوطة 2023

البحر الأحمر / القصير 2022

ادارة نورستند 2022

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

How to stay safe online

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

WB

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الاسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Do you like to go online? - Should we make friends with people we don't know?
- Do you make friends online? - Should we send photos to people we don't know?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I like to go online. - We like playing games with
- Sometimes, we make friends online. - We should keep our passwords secret.

Paragraphs

فقرات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Paragraphs

1. My classroom (Lessons 1 & 2)

I go to a prep school in our village. I have a big classroom. There are about forty students in my class. I have so many classmates. They like me and we all play together. We have so many things in the class. We have three computers. Also, we have two tablets. I like my classroom. It is always clean. Our teachers are so friendly.

2. Which do I like more, nature or technology? (Lessons 3 & 4)

I like nature. I enjoy looking at trees, flowers and rivers. I also like taking photos of them. When it's fine, I spend much time at parks. I go there with my friends. They're all using mobile phones. They like technology. They use social media all the time. I don't like that. Technology is useful, but I don't like it. I like nature more.

3. How to stay safe online

(General Exercises)

Most of us like technology! We like to go online. We should always try to stay safe online. We should never make friends with people we don't know. We should keep our passwords secret. We shouldn't tell anyone our personal information. We

should ask our parents or teachers for help. We shouldn't answer phone calls from anyone we don't know.

4. Nature (Al Azhar)

I love nature. I like walking in parks. I don't like being in the house. At school, I always go outside at break. I always take photos of flowers.

5. Technology in my classroom (Test)

My school uses technology. My classroom has got many important things. They are very useful. We often use tablets in our classroom. There are two laptops on our teacher's desk. There's a printer, too. We don't use mobile phones in the classroom. Our teacher has got an MP3 player. It's small and blue.



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- The speaker's mother gives him
a. presents b. instructions c. bags d. books
- The speaker listens to his mother because he doesn't want to make her
a. pleased b. sleep c. sad d. slow

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Aisha : Is there a printer in your classroom?

Salma :

2- Akram :

Hassan : No, she isn't taking a selfie.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I tapped the wrong icon. The message wasn't sent.
a. on b. at c. to d. for
- I enjoyed in the public park near my house.
a. future b. nature c. advice d. programme
- there any glasses for juice in the cupboard?
a. Are b. Is c. Was d. Has
- Be careful! The water is in the pot.
a. turning b. going c. boiling d. drinking
- Watch out! A motorbike fast.
a. comes b. is coming c. came d. will come
- The policeman said, "..... me your licence".
a. To give b. Giving c. Will give d. Give

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Yesterday, I went with my brother Ahmed to a nearby shopping centre. I always like going there because there are a lot of modern shops there. At the shopping centre, I bought my mum a new mobile phone for her birthday. Then we went to a computer shop to buy my brother Ahmed a new 3D printer. He is keen on making models. After that, we went to a café to have some drinks. I had some tea and my brother had some juice. We enjoyed our time there. We went back home at 8 o'clock.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. When did they go to the shopping centre?

2. What did the writer buy his mum?

3. What is Ahmed keen on?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- They bought a new 3D printer at the
a. shoe shop b. supermarket c. café d. computer shop
- They went back home at o'clock.
a. eight b. five c. eleven d. ten

E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

Nature

(محباب عنه قبل الاختيار)

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Do you love nature?
 - Do you like being in the house?
 - Do you have a garden at home?
 - Do you like flowers?
- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- I love nature.
 - I like watching trees, animals and
 - I like / don't like being in the house.
 - I like being in the garden.



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- The family love
a. technology b. sports c. food d. holidays
- The father's got a
a. printer b. mobile phone c. tablet d. laptop
- The speaker's got a
a. mobile phone b. car c. tablet d. printer
- The speaker's is always writing emails.
a. father b. sister c. son d. brother

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Manal wants to send a text message.

Manal : Hello, Ola.

Ola : 1

Manal : I want you to send a text message, please, Ola.

Ola : OK! First, tap the messages icon.

Manal : 2

Ola : Tap the name of the person.

Manal : I tapped it. 3

Ola : 4

Manal : OK! Then, I tap the SEND icon. Is that right?

Ola : Yes, that's right.

Manal : 5

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

WB

Hello! I'm Nadeen. I want to talk about my mobile phone. My parents bought it for me on my birthday two years ago. I like it very much and I think it's always good to have it in my bag. It's got a calculator in it and I usually use it. I can use it to go on the internet to read emails from my friends. It's fantastic. I know how to use my mobile to send text messages to my friends. My father showed me how to do that. The mobile has a wonderful camera. It's modern. I always take photos of my family and friends. I take selfies, too. I like my mobile very much.

A. Answer the following questions:

- Where does Nadeen keep her mobile phone?
- What can Nadeen use her phone for? Give two examples.
- When did she get her phone? Why?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "it" refers to
a. the internet b. the mobile phone
c. the calculator d. the email
- Nadeen's mobile has a wonderful
a. camera b. screen c. board d. back
- Nadeen's showed her how to send text messages.
a. mother b. brother c. grandfather d. father

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A is a machine that makes water hot.
a. cattle b. kite c. can d. kettle
- A phone is a small phone that you can carry with you.
a. tablet b. mobile c. tape d. secret
- shout. My father is asleep.
a. Don't b. Not c. Do d. Often
- I bought a new MP3 to play music on.
a. speaker b. computer c. player d. user

5. _____ is a lot of food in the kitchen. Go and have your lunch.
 a. There b. Where c. Their d. Other
6. They used a/an _____ to make a plastic model.
 a. icon b. mobile phone c. charger d. 3D printer
7. Can you _____ me a text message when you arrive?
 a. spend b. stay c. send d. stop
8. _____ on the icon on your computer.
 a. Click b. Fill c. Give d. Play
9. The boys _____ Maths now.
 a. study b. are studying c. studies d. studied
10. We _____ many selfies when we were in the park.
 a. took b. designed c. used d. made

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Nada learns French at present. (.....)
2. "Always eat during the lesson in class," the teacher said. (.....)
3. Are your mother cooking now? (.....)
4. There aren't any sugar in my tea. (.....)

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

Technology in your classroom

[مُحِبٌّ عَنْهُ قَبْلَ الْاِخْتِيَارِ]

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Does your school use technology?
- Do you use technology inside your classroom?
- What forms of technology do you use inside your classroom?
- How are these things useful?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Most schools use technology.
- My classroom has got many important things.
- We often use in our classroom.
- There is/ are on our teacher's desk.
- We don't use in the classroom.

New Hello!

5 UNIT

Holidays

Objectives

Reading:

A description of a holiday;
an advertisement for learning English

Writing:

An advertisement for a holiday;
an email about a holiday

Listening:

A conversation about a holiday;
a discussion about a day out

Speaking:

Describing a place; talking about
a holiday; responding to news

Language:

The past simple

Values:

Respect

Issues:

Environmental awareness.

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 44 - 47 WB pages 102-103

Key Vocabulary

beach	شاطئ	lake	بحيرة
desert	صحراء	river	نهر
cave	كهف	sea	بحر
mountain	جبل	waterfall	شلال
jungle	غابة استوائية / ادغال	holiday	عطلة / اجازة
forest	غابة كبيرة		

استمع إلى المفردات



Verbs & Nouns

climb a mountain	يتسلق جبل	play games	يلعب ألعاب
eat delicious food	ياكل طعام لذيذ	ride a bike	يركب دراجة
go in / into a cave	يدخل كهفا	see a camel	يشاهد جمل
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة خلوية	sleep in a tent	ينام في خيمة
make a sandcastle	يبني قلعة رملية	swim in the sea / lake	يسبح في البحر / البحيرة
visit a family	يزور أسرة		

Vocabulary

weather	الطقس	bat	خفاش
hotel	فندق	map	خريطة
museum	متحف	rock	صخر
warm	دافئ	echo	صدى الصوت
sand	رمل	turn (n) (ed)	دور / يلف

Countries, cities & places

Morocco	دولة المغرب	Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى
Marrakesh	مدينة مراكش بالمغرب	Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر
Djara Cave	كهف الجارة (بالصحراء الكبرى)	Siwa	واحة سيوة
Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة		

Expressions & Prepositions

Lessons 1 & 2

That's right.	هذا صحيح.	on the beach	على الشاطئ
That's easy.	هذا سهل.	ride on a camel	يركب جمل
have a fantastic holiday	يقضي اجازة رائعة	call out	ينادي بصوت عال
My turn!	حان دوري!		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
ride	rode	ridden
eat	ate	eaten
hear	heard	heard

Word

Meaning

Opposite

delicious	لذيذ	tasty	tasteless	سئ الطعام
frightened	خائف	scared	unafraid	غير خائف

Definitions

beach	شاطئ	the area of sand or small stones ⁽¹⁾ in front of the sea
desert	صحراء	a very dry place where it does not often rain
forest	غابة كبيرة	a large area with lots of trees close together
lake	بحيرة	a large natural ⁽²⁾ area of water, with land all around
mountain	جبل	a high area of land, higher than the land around it
jungle	ادغال	a tropical ⁽³⁾ forest with lots of plants and trees
waterfall	شلال	the part of a river where the water falls down from a high place
cave	كهف	an opening in a large rock or mountain
river	نهر	water that flows ⁽⁴⁾ naturally from the mountains to the sea
sea	بحر	the salt water that covers a larger part of the Earth

Language Notes

1 in - on - at

* In + شهور on + أيام at + ساعات

Ex. My birthday is in October.

Ex. I went to the park on Friday.

Ex. I played games at 10 o'clock.

2) beach - bank - coast

• beach [شاطئ / شاطئ / مهبأ للسباحة]

Ex. Many people go to beaches in summer.

• coast [ساحل / أرض بجوار البحر (تستخدم غالباً في الوصف الجغرافي)]

Ex. He lives on the east coast of the USA.

• bank [ضفة / أرض على امتداد نهر أو بحيرة]

Ex. Trees grow along the banks of the Nile in my village.

3) desert - dessert

• desert صحراء

Ex. Camels can travel many days across the desert.

• dessert [التحلية (بعد الأكل)]

Ex. I ordered fish and fruit for the dessert.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We visited our aunt Wednesday.
a. on b. in c. at d. of
- The tourists enjoyed walking along the sandy
a. coast b. beach c. air d. map
- Nobody likes to live in the It's too hot.
a. dessert b. city c. beach d. desert

Audioscript

SB Page (45)

استمع إلى النصوص

Taha : Guess⁽¹⁾ where I am, Sara. I'm in a place where there are a lot of trees.

Sara : Are there monkeys in the trees?

Taha : No. It's very dark⁽²⁾ and quiet.Sara : Are you in a forest⁽³⁾?

Taha : Yes, I am!

Sara : My turn⁽⁴⁾! I'm in a place with a lot of sand.Taha : I know! You're in the desert⁽⁵⁾.

Sara : No, I'm not. There isn't any water in the desert. There's a lot of water in MY place.

Taha : You're on the beach!

Sara : That's right!



- ١- تخمين
- ٢- مظلم
- ٣- غابة
- ٤- دور
- ٥- صحراء

Lessons 1 & 2

Taha : Now I'm in a dark place. When I speak, I can hear my words again and again. Listen. (calls out with echo⁽⁶⁾) Hello!
(echo comes twice).Sara : That's easy! You're in a cave⁽⁷⁾. Can you see any bats⁽⁸⁾?

Taha : No, I can't. It's very dark in here!

- ٦- صدى صوت
- ٧- كهف
- ٨- خفاش



Reading

SB Page (46)

My holiday photos

- Last summer, when the weather⁽¹⁾ was hot, we went to the beach near my home in Hurghada⁽²⁾. Mariam made this sandcastle⁽³⁾. There was a cave in the rocks. But Mariam didn't want to go into the cave because she was frightened⁽⁴⁾!
- In October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic⁽⁵⁾ in Al Azhar Park⁽⁶⁾. We ate delicious⁽⁷⁾ food. Then we played games and Ali rode⁽⁸⁾ his bike.
- When I was eight, we went to Siwa⁽⁹⁾. We swam in the lake⁽¹⁰⁾, and climbed the mountain⁽¹¹⁾. We saw camels and slept in a tent⁽¹²⁾ in the desert. It was my favourite⁽¹³⁾ holiday!

- ١- الطقس
- ٢- الغردقة
- ٣- قلعة رملية
- ٤- مرعوبة
- ٥- نزهة خلوية
- ٦- حديقة للزهر
- ٧- تذاير
- ٨- ركب
- ٩- مدينة صينية
- ١٠- بحيرة
- ١١- جبل
- ١٢- خيمة
- ١٣- مفضل



Say it correctly

* sandcastle

١ بنطق الجاء الملون (cc) مثل نطقه في كلمة (car) ولا ينطق حرف (t)

WB Page (103)

Hi Eman,

Last summer, my family had a fantastic⁽¹⁾ holiday in Morocco⁽²⁾. We visited a big beach and then we slept in a nice hotel⁽³⁾. We didn't swim in the sea. It wasn't very warm⁽⁴⁾! But I rode on a camel⁽⁵⁾. That was fun. We visited a city called Marrakesh⁽⁶⁾, too, and we went to a museum⁽⁷⁾. We also ate some delicious food. Write soon.

Hana

- ١- رائع
- ٢- دولة المغرب
- ٣- فندق
- ٤- دافئ
- ٥- جمل
- ٦- مدينة مراكش
- ٧- متحف

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- The is very high and there's lots of water in it.
a. beach b. cave c. lake d. waterfall
- A is a hole in the mountain.
a. lake b. cave c. river d. forest
- How did the man that high mountain?
a. have b. eat c. make d. climb
- A park is a place where we can have
a. picnics b. lessons c. voyages d. books
- Children like to make on the beach.
a. rocks b. water c. sandcastles d. cows
- I'd love to go to the I can swim in the sea.
a. desert b. beach c. jungle d. forest
- The Nile is the longest in the world.
a. forest b. sea c. waterfall d. river

Bit by Bit Exercises

- The boys swam across the
a. mountain b. desert c. lake d. jungle
- Ali his bike to school.
a. rides b. gets up c. drives d. sails
- The children played the beach.
a. in b. from c. with d. on
- We a fantastic holiday in Luxor last winter.
a. had b. lost c. rode d. went
- It is your Go and set the table.
a. team b. turn c. toe d. truck
- A is a tropical forest with lots of plants and trees.
a. jungle b. desert c. waterfall d. beach
- Don't go that cave. It isn't safe.
a. under b. about c. into d. after
- The accident happened yesterday 10 o'clock pm.
a. in b. at c. on d. of

Lessons 1 & 2

- The opposite of "frightened" is
a. unafraid b. scary c. scared d. attractive
- We saw a lot of trees in the
a. river b. forest c. waterfall d. sea
- I went to Alexandria and swam in the
a. desert b. mountain c. sea d. cave
- We slept in a tent when we went to the
a. desert b. dress c. address d. dessert
- means tasty.
a. Famous b. Important c. Tasteless d. Delicious

Language

The past simple tense

Usage الاستخدام

زمن الماضي البسيط

يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وانتهى في الماضي.

Form التكوين

Subject التصريف الثاني للفعل + (كل الضمائر) فاعل

تنقسم الأفعال إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة
أولاً: الأفعال المنتظمة: هي الأفعال التي يتكون منها الماضي بإضافة (ed) لآخر الفعل

play → played walk → walked

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) نضيف (d) فقط للفعل

like → liked dance → danced

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يليه حرف (y) نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ied)

study → studied carry → carried

- يضاعف الحرف الأخير في بعض الأفعال عند إضافة (ed)

stop → stopped travel → travelled

Ex. I climbed a mountain yesterday.

Ex. I played games last week.

ثانياً: الأفعال غير المنتظمة: وهي التي لا يضاف لها (ed) في الماضي وتُحفظ

go → went eat → ate

Ex. He went to the beach.

ومن أهم الأفعال غير المنتظمة التي يجب أن نتعلمها.

	present	past simple
Verb to (be)	I am	was
	He / She / It is	
	We / You / They are	were
Verb to (have)	I / We / You / They have	had
	He / She / It has	
Verb to (do)	I / We / You / They do	did
	He / She / It does	

Ex. I **was** in Hurghada last summer.

Ex. Hassan **had** a car when he lived in Alexandria.

Negative النفي

ينفي زمن الماضي البسيط بالصيغة الآتية:

Subject + did not + inf. مصدر الفعل

شكل الفعل بالجملة	طريقة نفيه
- فعل في الماضي البسيط ينتهي بـ d / ed	- did not (didn't) + inf. مصدر الفعل
was / were	- was not (wasn't) / were not (weren't)
had	- did not have
did	- did not do

Ex. I **visited** my family.

I **didn't visit** my family.

Ex. I **had** a bike when I was young.

I **didn't have** a bike when I was young.

Ex. I **did** my homework yesterday.

I **didn't do** my homework yesterday.

لاحظ الاختصارات:

- did not = didn't - was not = wasn't - were not = weren't

Question السؤال

Lessons 1 & 2

• نسال عن زمن الماضي البسيط بالصيغة الآتية:

... مصدر الفعل + Inf + فاعل + Did (كلمة استفهام)

Ex. Did she **ride** her bike?

- Yes, she **did**. - No, she **didn't**.

Ex. Why did you **come late**?

وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	last (week - month - year)	... السابق	ago	منذ
in (2018)	في «سنة سابقة»	in the past	في الماضي	once	ذات مرة

Notes

يمكن أن تأتي كلمة [always دائماً] مع زمن الماضي البسيط إذا كان الحدث متكرر الحدوث في الماضي.

Ex. When I was on holiday, I **always visited** my cousins.

اللقطة: اليوم 2023

Exercises on Language

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Adam is telling Tamer about his visit to Alexandria.

Adam : Can I ask you some questions, Tamer?

Tamer : ①

Adam : Where did you go on holiday last year?

Tamer : ②

Adam : ③

Tamer : I went with my family.

Adam : ④

Tamer : We travelled by train.

Adam : Did you swim in the sea?

Tamer : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. The beach far from Sayed's home.
a was were are weren't
2. Sayed and Mariam into the cave last week.
a going went goes go
3. Did you on holiday last year?
a went goes go going
4. What did you on Saturday evening?
a did do does doing
5. What did your mother at the market?
a buy bought buying buys
6. Where did you go on holiday summer?
a ago next least last
7. When I eight, I went to Luxor.
a am was have can
8. I into the cave because I was frightened.
a to go go didn't go don't go
9. Last summer, my family a fantastic holiday.
a have has don't have had
10. How did you to school yesterday?
a go goes going went
11. I with my father in Alexandria last summer.
a swim swam am swimming swims

Bit by Bit Exercises

12. A: you travel to Aswan? B: No, I didn't.
a Does Don't Did Do
13. When I went to Alexandria, I in a holiday flat.
a sleeps slept sleep sleeping
14. Hassan in Cairo last week.
a isn't aren't wasn't didn't
15. We visited the museum and a lot of tourists.
a saw sees see seeing

Lessons 1 & 2

16. I always the zoo when I was young.
a visit visited visiting visits
17. How did Hala go to the beach last year?
a deep old often far

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB & Exams

1. A : Do you go to Alexandria?
B : Yes, I did .
2. He didn't played football yesterday.
3. Did you climbed the mountain last year?

Bit by Bit Exercises

4. I have dinner with my family an hour ago.
5. He swam in the sea, but he didn't saw any dolphins.
6. We do a lot of things yesterday.
7. We ate pizza three days next.
8. Do you meet Ahmed last month?
9. I went to the beach, but I don't make a sandcastle.
10. I never travel abroad during my childhood.
11. Hassan can run fast when he was young.

Speaking

Talk about your holiday

يمكن أن نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية للحديث عن إجازة ستقوم بها:

- I'd like to + Inf. أريد أن
- You can + Inf. تستطيع أن

Ex. I'd like to go to the beach. You can swim in the sea, or make a sandcastle!

Ex. I'd like to go to the desert. You can sleep in a tent or go in the cave!

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mustafa is talking to Eyad about a place he went to.

- Eyad : Where were you yesterday, Mustafa?
 Mustafa : 1 ?
 Eyad : 2
 Mustafa : I went to Sinai. ?
 Eyad : 3
 Mustafa : I went with my family.
 Eyad : What did you see there?
 Mustafa : 4
 Eyad : Did you enjoy the holiday?
 Mustafa : 5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. When Hana was young, she on a camel. البحيرة / دمنهور 2023
 a rode b walked c bought d drove
 2. We went on a holiday in the desert and slept in a سوهاج / الخميم 2023
 a bed b tent c hole d boat
 3. We stayed on the and enjoyed the sea. المنومية / موبينا 2023
 a desert b valley c moon d beach
 4. They climbed up the and got to the top.
 a river b desert c mountain d jungle
 5. There's a at the end of this river.
 a waterfall b water bottle c water tap d watermelon

Language

6. What did Mona in her office yesterday? بلق الإسكندرية 2021
 a finding b find c finds d found
 7. your friends ready for the exam last week? أسوان / إدفو 2021
 a Was b Are c Were d Did
 8. When I was on holiday, I always my cousins. القاهرة / المرح 2023
 a visited b visits c visit d visiting
 9. Ahmed and his family a picnic at the park yesterday.
 a have b has c don't have d had

10. I went to the zoo and I a lot of animals.
 a. see b. saw c. seeing d. sees

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She buys fruit and went home. (.....)
 2. A: When do you buy this car? B: Last year. (.....)
 3. Huda doesn't know the answer yesterday. (.....)
 4. I didn't visit my uncle a week before. الشرقية / الحسينية 2023 (.....)
 5. Where had you travel last week? البحيرة / إيتان البارود 2023 (.....)
 6. I don't play football after school yesterday. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

Your last weekend

(عجابه في آخر الوحدة)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الاسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- How was your last weekend?
- Where did you spend it?
- What was the weather like?
- What did you do during the weekend?
- When did you come back home?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Last weekend was
- We spent it in
- The weather was
- We enjoyed
- We stayed in a flat by the beach.
- I want to go there again.

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 48-50 WB pages 104 - 105

Key Vocabulary

holiday courses	برامج للإجازة	dolphin
language school	مدرسة لغات	holiday flat
queen	ملكة	flag
view	منظر / مشهد	souvenir
castle	قلعة	camp (ed)
hotel	فندق	

استمع إلى المفردات

دولفين

شقة للإجازة

علم / راية

هدية تذكارية

يعسكر / يخيم

Vocabulary

culture	ثقافة	safari rides
advertisement	إعلان	sea animal
the London Eye	عين أو عجلة لندن	Really?
a ride	جولة الركوب (في الملاهي مثلاً)	market
holiday activity	نشاط في إجازة	stay (ed)

رحلات سافاري

حيوان بحري

حقاً؟

سوق

يقيم

Expressions & Prepositions

have a great holiday	يقضي إجازة رائعة	get to	يصل إلى
have a wonderful time	يقضي وقت رائع	walk all around	يتجول حول
have a wonderful view	يتمتع بمنظر رائع	in Arabic	باللغة العربية
have dinner	يتناول العشاء	at the same time	في نفس الوقت
It was nice to meet you.	سعدت بلقائك.	by the lake	بجوار البحيرة
do projects	ينفذ مشروعات	from the top	من القمة
ride a horse	يركب حصان	from all around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
eat ...for dinner	ياكل ... على العشاء	go on holiday	يذهب في إجازة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
come	يأتي	came	come
buy	يشترى	bought	bought

Word	Meaning	Opposite
friendly	ودود	unfriendly
wonderful	رائع	amazing
		terrible

Definitions

camp (v)	يعسكر / يخيم	sleep for a time in a tent ⁽¹⁾
castle (n)	قلعة	a big, strong building from the past
dolphin (n)	دولفين	a friendly sea animal
holiday flat (n)	شقة للإجازة	a place to stay for a holiday
souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية	something you buy to remember a holiday
view (n)	منظر	what you can see from a place
queen (n)	ملكة	a woman who rules ⁽²⁾ a country
flag (n)	علم / راية	the colours of a country on a piece of material

١- خيمة
٢- تحكم

Language Notes

1) souvenir - present

• souvenir هدية تذكارية

Ex. John bought a medal of the Pyramids as a souvenir of Egypt.

• present (في عيد ميلاد مثلاً) هدية

Ex. My father gave me a present on my birthday.

2) view - review

• view (n) منظر / مشهد (ما يمكن أن نراه من مكان معين)

Ex. I had a beautiful view of the Nile from my hotel room.

• review (n) مقال نقدي

Ex. You should read that review about the film, then you watch it.

3) remember - remind

• remember يتذكر (من لقاء نفسه)

Ex. I can remember my last holiday in Alex.

• remind (of) يذكر (شخص بشخص / بشيء)

Ex. These photos reminded me of my last holiday.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mum got a lot of on her birthday party.
a prizes b souvenirs c presents d holidays
- We'd like a room with a of the sea.
a palace b view c opinion d space
- What's your phone number? I can't it.
a remind b meet c reply d remember

Audioscript

SB Page (48)

استمع إلى النصوص



Hatem: Hi, Yunis! How was your holiday⁽¹⁾?

Yunis: Hi, Hatem! It was great, thanks!

Hatem: Where did you go?

Yunis: I went to Jordan⁽²⁾ by plane.

Hatem: Wow! Did you visit your family there?

Yunis: No, we stayed in a holiday flat⁽³⁾ by the beach. We had a wonderful view⁽⁴⁾ from the windows. Every morning, I saw dolphins⁽⁵⁾ in the sea.

Hatem: Did you swim in the sea?

Yunis: Yes, we did. We swam every day! We used a map⁽⁶⁾ and read a book about Jordan, and we visited a lot of famous⁽⁷⁾ places. We went to this old castle⁽⁸⁾. Look, here's a picture of it on my phone⁽⁹⁾.

Hatem: How did you get to the castle?

Yunis: We climbed up the mountain!

Hatem: Did you buy any souvenirs⁽¹⁰⁾?

Yunis: Yes, I did. I bought this small souvenir for you.

Hatem: Oh, how interesting⁽¹¹⁾. Egypt's flag⁽¹²⁾ is also red, white and black. Jordan's flag has another colour - green, too. Thanks, Yunis!

Say it correctly

* advertisement

يمكن نطق المقطع الملون (is) بطريقتين:

الأولى: بعدم نطق حرف (i)

الثانية: ينطق حرف (i) مثل صوت (i) في كلمة (right)

WB Page (104)

Narrator 1

Man 1: Where did you go on holiday last year?

Narrator 2

Man 1: Where did you stay?

Narrator 3

Man 1: How did you travel there?

Narrator 4

Man 1: Did you climb a mountain?

Narrator 5

Man 1: What did you eat?

Reading

SB Page (50)

Lessons 3 & 4

Learn English in London!

Our students come from all around the world to study and learn in this exciting city.

Holiday courses⁽¹⁾ are for one, two or three weeks.

I had a wonderful time at the language school⁽²⁾. I was there for two weeks. It was nice to meet students from different countries. My favourite place was Windsor Castle⁽³⁾. We went there by train. We walked all around the castle, but we did not see the Queen⁽⁴⁾!

Mona, Egypt

I learnt English and had a really great holiday at the same time! London's shops are fantastic⁽⁵⁾. I bought a lot of souvenirs. My favourite activity was a ride on the London Eye⁽⁶⁾, because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top.

Laura, France

When I first came to the language school, I was not very good at English. But the teachers helped me a lot. The lessons were fun⁽⁷⁾, and for homework we did interesting projects⁽⁸⁾. I enjoyed speaking English!

Jurgen, Germany



WB Page (105)

New Message

Hi Ali

Last summer, I travelled⁽¹⁾ to Egypt because I wanted to learn Arabic⁽²⁾. I went to a language school in Cairo. I had a wonderful time. I was there for two weeks. The people in Cairo were very friendly⁽³⁾. Now I have many new friends.

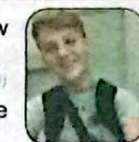
When I first went to the language school, I wasn't very good at Arabic. But the teachers helped me, and the lessons were fun. Now I can talk to my new friends in Arabic!

Cairo's shops are fantastic. I bought lots of souvenirs. My favourite⁽⁴⁾ place was the Cairo Tower⁽⁵⁾. I enjoyed the view of the city from the top⁽⁶⁾. What did you do last summer?

Write soon and tell me.

Andy, England.

- 1- سافرت
- 2- اللغة العربية
- 3- ودودون
- 4- مفضل
- 5- برج القاهرة
- 6- القمة



Send



Videoscript

SB Page (48)

Narrator: Almost 15 million people come to Egypt every year.

It's a very popular place for a holiday.

When people come to Egypt, they can visit exciting cities like Alexandria, beaches, caves, and the beautiful desert.

They also come to see the many important places from history.

This is the Khan family. They're from Jordan. Last year they visited Egypt on holiday.

They visited Giza to see the Pyramids and the Sphinx.

And they rode on a camel. They visited the beautiful city of Luxor. Then, they went to the Valley of the Kings, where they visited the Karnak Temple. They also spent some days in Cairo.

They went shopping in the Khan el-Khalili market. Here, they bought souvenirs for their friends back at home.

Finally, they went to Hurghada and they swam in the Red Sea.

Egypt is a wonderful place for a holiday. Where do you want to go?

- ١- تقريرنا
٢- التاريخ
٣- عائلة خان
٤- أبو الهول
٥- وادي الملوك
٦- معبد الكرنك
٧- سوق خان الخليلي

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- A is what you can see from a place.
a. view b. picture c. message d. flat
- A is a place to stay for a holiday.
a. library b. restaurant c. castle d. holiday flat
- The is a friendly sea animal.
a. dolphin b. shark c. lion d. tiger
- To is to sleep for a time in a tent.
a. buy b. camp c. visit d. ride

Bit by Bit Exercises

- What time do you usually dinner?
a. do b. have c. stay d. ride
- I learnt to a horse on my uncle's farm.
a. drive b. lead c. ride d. sell
- Students have to a project this year.
a. do b. made c. take d. build
- I can't who our teacher of English was last year.
a. remind b. review c. remember d. replay

Lessons 3 & 4

- A great king built this in the past.
a. bottle b. kettle c. poster d. castle
- I bought some from Khan el Khalili.
a. vegetables b. souvenirs c. players d. picnics
- Tourist companies always organize holiday
a. courses b. classes c. beaches d. units
- Egypt's is red, white and black.
a. flat b. flag c. house d. holiday
- Everyone likes Samir because he is
a. boring b. rude c. friendly d. ugly
- I read a/an in the newspaper for new jobs.
a. story b. envelope c. letter d. advertisement
- I went to a/an school to learn English.
a. sports b. music c. language d. art
- A is the wife of a king.
a. nurse b. queen c. teacher d. farmer
- Andy can talk to his friends Arabic.
a. at b. with c. on d. in
- People all around the world visit Egypt.
a. from b. for c. on d. in
- We're going holiday tomorrow.
a. at b. in c. on d. of
- "....." is similar in meaning to "amazing".
a. Terrible b. Careful c. Famous d. Wonderful
- I a bus with my friends for school every day.
a. drive b. go c. climb d. ride

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about your last holiday

السؤال والجواب عن إجازتك الماضية

Question

- Where did you go on holiday?
إلى أين ذهبت في الإجازة؟
- Did you swim in the sea?
هل سبحت في البحر؟
- What did you see there?
ماذا رأيتم هناك؟
- What food did you eat?
ما الطعام الذي أكلته؟

Answer

- I went to Sharm El Sheikh.
ذهبت إلى شرم الشيخ.
- Yes, I did.
نعم، فعلت.
- I saw dolphins.
رأيت أسماك الدلافين.
- I ate a lot of fish.
أكلت الكثير من السمك.

Key Vocabulary

exciting
wind
windy
tower

منبر
رابع
عاصف / شديد الرياح
برج

postcard
interesting
snail

استمع إلى المفردات

بطاقة بريدية
شيق
حيوان القوقع

Vocabulary

both time
ticket
play (n)
café
closed (adj)
closing
rule
sign
header
signature

وقت الاستحمام
تذكرة
مسرحية
مقهى
مغلق
خاتمة
قاعدة
لافتة
رأس «بريد إلكتروني»
توقيع

greeting
sender
art
tourist
sandals
shorts
grass
pass (ed)
happen (ed)

تحية
الراسل
الفن
سائح
صندل
بنطلون قصير (شورت)
عشب / حشائش
يمر بـ
يحدث

Expressions & Prepositions

What a pity!
How exciting!
See you soon.
Best wishes.
Oh dear!

يا للأسف!
يا له من أمر مثير!
أراك قريباً.
أطيب الأمنيات.
يا إلهي!

on the river
go on a boat trip
get on a train
in bed
travel from... to...

في النهر
يذهب في رحلة بالقارب
يستقل القطار
في الفراش / نائم
يسافر من... إلى...

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
leave	يغادر	left	left
win	يفوز	won	won
put	يضع	put	put

Famous places

the River Seine
the Science Museum
Ramses Station
the Luxembourg Gardens

نهر السين
متحف العلوم
محطة رمسيس
حدائق لوكسمبورج

the Louvre
the Valley of the Kings
The Eiffel Tower

متحف اللوفر
وادي الملوك
برج إيفل

Rules for tourists

Put your litter in the bin.
Do not wear sandals or shorts.
Do not take photos.
Do not walk on the grass.

ضع قمامتك في سلة المهملات.
لا ترتدي صندل أو شورت.
لا تلتقط صور.
لا تمشي على الحشائش.

Word

Meaning

Opposite

interesting	شيق	exciting	boring	ممل
closed	مغلق	locked	opened	مفتوح
closing	خاتمة	end	opening	مقدمة

Definitions

snail حيوان القوقع a small, slow animal with a shell on its back

Language Notes

1) win - earn

• win (won) يفوز (بميدالية / جائزة / مسابقة... إلخ)
Ex. Hassan is hoping to win the gold medal.

• earn (ed) (money - his living) يكسب (مال - قوت يومه)
Ex. He earns a lot of money a year.
Ex. My uncle works hard to earn his living.

2) enjoy

- يلي الفعل enjoy دائماً فعلاً آخر مضافاً له (ing) أو اسم:
Ex. I enjoyed watching the film. Ex. The tourists enjoyed their time in Egypt.

3) lose - miss

• lose (lost) يفقد (شيء / يَخْصِرُ مباراةً مثلاً)
Ex. I have lost my ticket. I need another one.
Ex. Our team lost the last match.

• miss (ed) يفوته شيء / يفتقد «بوحشه» شخص
Ex. I missed the bus, so I took a taxi.
Ex. I really miss my dad.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Who do you think will the match?
a. earn b. win c. give d. take
- My children enjoy their mum with the housework.
a. help b. to help c. helping d. helps
- I the first lesson because I was late.
a. missed b. lost c. got d. caught

Audioscript

SB Page (51)

استمع إلى النص



Man : What did you do yesterday, Mazin?

Mazin : I went to the zoo.

Man : Oh, that's interesting!! Did you enjoy the day?

Mazin : No, I didn't.

Man : Oh dear! Why not?

Mazin : Well, first, we went to see the monkeys. But they were all very tired. I think they were in bed.

Man : What a pity! So you didn't see them?

Mazin : No, we didn't. Then we went into a cave to see the bats. But it was dark, and I didn't see anything.

Man : What did you do next?

Mazin : Then we bought an ice cream and went to see the elephants. It was both time for them.

Man : Wow! How exciting!

Mazin : Yes, I enjoyed that. But then something bad happened.

Man : Oh no! What happened?

Mazin : An elephant ate my ice cream!



- هذا شيق.
- متعبون.
- نائمون.
- كهف.
- مظلم.
- وقت الاستحمام.
- استمتعت به.
- ماذا حدث؟



Reading

SB Page (52)

Lessons 5 & 6

New Message

From : Fatma
To : Azza
Subject : My holiday
Hi, Azza!



- رجعت
- قوافع
- برج إيفل
- منظر / مشهد
- متاحف
- حدائق لوكسمبورج
- نهر السين
- متحف العلوم
- متحف اللوفر
- بطاقات بريدية

I am back⁽¹⁾ from my holiday in Paris. I had a wonderful time! Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails⁽²⁾!

One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower⁽³⁾, and from the top we had a view⁽⁴⁾ of the city. We visited museums⁽⁵⁾ and had a picnic in the Luxembourg Gardens⁽⁶⁾. We also went on a boat on the river Seine⁽⁷⁾. What a pity we did not have time to go to the Science Museum⁽⁸⁾. I also wanted to see the art at the Louvre⁽⁹⁾, but it was closed. 😞

Near our hotel there was a busy market. I bought a T-shirt and some postcards⁽¹⁰⁾. I also bought you a souvenir. It is a very small Eiffel Tower! You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light on the top.

See you soon!

Fatma

Send



WB Page (106)

Hanana : I went to the beach last weekend.

Lina : Really?

Hanana : When we arrived, it was very windy.

Lina : Oh dear!

Hanana : We didn't want to swim in the sea.

Lina : What a pity!

Hanana : Then the wind stopped and we went on a boat trip.

Lina : How exciting!

Hanana : We saw six big dolphins!

Lina : Wow!

Hanana : Then my brother's phone fell in the water.

Lina : Oh no.

Hanana : The phone was OK. Some new phones can go in water!

Lina : That's interesting!



New Message

Hi Fady,

Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our tickets⁽¹⁾ at Ramses Station, then we got on the train. There were people from many countries on the train, for example⁽²⁾, England and Australia⁽³⁾.

The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock, and soon we passed⁽⁴⁾ Giza. I enjoyed the view from the window and I saw the Nile. There were lots of boats. It was beautiful.

We arrived⁽⁵⁾ at Luxor at quarter past six. Many tourists⁽⁶⁾ left the train here. They wanted to see the Valley of the Kings⁽⁷⁾!

The train continued⁽⁸⁾ to Aswan. We arrived there at ten o'clock. My uncle was there to meet us! It was a wonderful journey⁽⁹⁾.

See you soon!

Mazin

١- تذكر
٢- على سبيل المثال
٣- استراليا
٤- يمر بـ
٥- وصلنا
٦- سائحون
٧- وادي الملوك
٨- استمر / اكمل
٩- رحلة



Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- I want to visit the Eiffel one day.
a. Zoo b. Garden c. Tower d. Bank
- What a ! I couldn't meet my friends.
a. city b. wonderful c. fantastic d. pity
- My favourite football team 5-0.
a. won b. gained c. earned d. missed
- Everyone liked the film. It was really
a. boring b. interesting c. unfriendly d. ugly
- In Paris, I ate many things like
a. snakes b. bears c. snails d. lions

Bit by Bit Exercises

- We don't let the grow in our garden.
a. grass b. pass c. class d. glass
- We visited the Valley of the last year.
a. Tourists b. Nurses c. Kings d. Farmers
- It was a/an match. We enjoyed watching it.
a. boring b. tiring c. exciting d. terrible
- It was too so we couldn't go for a picnic.
a. nice b. windy c. funny d. happy
- Ziad always wears in summer because it is hot.
a. sandals b. jackets c. posters d. sandcastles
- My dad sends his to your parents.
a. advertisements b. grades c. greetings d. degrees
- We bought tickets at Ramses then we travelled to Aswan.
a. Station b. Bank c. Library d. Hotel
- This reminds me of my visit to the Pyramids.
a. word b. station c. time d. postcard

Speaking

Responding to news

الاستجابة للأخبار

نرد على الأخبار باختلاف نوعيها (سارة / غير سارة) بالتعبيرات الآتية :

Good news

- A: I went to the zoo.
B: That's interesting! ذلك أمر شيق!
A: We went to see the elephants. It was bath time.
B: How exciting! باله من شيء مثير!
A: I went to the beach last weekend.
B: Really? حقاً?
A: I saw dolphins.
B: Wow! واو! رائع!

Bad news

- A: I didn't enjoy the day there.
B: Oh dear! يا إلهي!
A: The monkeys were in bed.
B: What a pity! بالأسف! / بالأسرة!
A: My brother's phone fell in the water.
B: Oh no! اوه لا!

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hana and Lina are talking about holidays.

Hanan : I went to the beach last weekend.

Lina : ①

Hanan : When we arrived, it was very windy.

Lina : ②

Hanan : We didn't want to swim in the sea.

Lina : ③

Hanan : Then the wind stopped and we went on a boat trip.

Lina : How exciting! ④

Hanan : Yes, I enjoyed the boat trip.

Lina : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

- My friend sent me a _____ from Paris.
a. signature b. postcard c. post office d. tourist
- A _____ is a small, slow animal with a shell on its back.
a. snail b. mail c. frog d. snake
- Today is too _____ for a picnic.
a. wind b. tired c. pity d. windy
- Oh _____, I think I've lost my keys.
a. really b. pity c. dear d. exciting
- Hani was unlucky to _____ the first prize.
a. win b. lose c. earn d. miss
- A : Mohamad lost his new phone.
B : What a _____ !
a. pet b. beat c. pot d. pity
- A : I spent a day with a famous person last week.
B : _____ exciting!
a. Who b. How c. Why d. Which
- It's a nice day. Let's go _____ a boat trip.
a. on b. in c. for d. with
- We can't sail when there is no _____.
a. cloud b. rain c. wind d. sun
- People usually enjoy _____ for clothes.
a. shop b. to shop c. to shopping d. shopping

Review

Vocabulary

beach	شاطئ	windy	عاصف / شديد الرياح	jungle	غابة استوائية / أدغال
desert	صحراء	holiday courses	برامج للإجازات	exciting	مثير
river	نهر	hotel	فندق	tower	برج
dolphin	دولفين	waterfall	شلال	view	منظر / مشهد
cave	كهف	queen	ملكة	castle	قلعة
mountain	جبل	flag	علم / راية	forest	غابة كبيرة
lake	بحيرة	souvenir	هدية تذكارية	interesting	شيق
sea	بحر	postcard	بطاقة بريدية	snail	حيوان القواقع
holiday flat	شقة للإجازة	language school	مدرسة لتعليم اللغات	camp (ed)	بمسكن / بيمين
wind	رياح				

Verbs & Nouns

climb a mountain	يتسلق جبل	play games	يلعب ألعاب
eat delicious food	ياكل طعام لذيذ	ride a bike / a horse	يركب دراجة / حصان
go in / into a cave	يدخل كهفا	see a camel	يشاهد جمل
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة خلوية	sleep in a tent	ينام في خيمة
make a sandcastle	يبنى قلعة رملية	swim in the sea / lake	يسبح في البحر / البحيرة
visit a family	يزور أسرة		



Language

The past simple tense

Form	يتكون من التصريف الثاني بالإضافة (d / ed) للفعل الأساسي المنتظم play → played, like → liked, carry → carried - الأفعال غير المنتظمة لا يضاف لها (ed) وتحفظ كما هي go → went
Negative	Subject + did not (didn't) + Inf. Ex. I didn't complete my work yesterday.
Question	[كلمة استفهام] Did + subject + Inf...? Ex. (When) did you go to the supermarket?
Keywords	yesterday - last... - in the past - ago - in (2018) - once

Speaking

1 Talk about your holiday

تحدث عن إجازتك
يمكن أن نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية للحديث عن إجازة.

- I'd like to + inf.

- You can + inf.

Ex I'd like to go to the park. You can enjoy nature there.

2 Ask and answer questions about your last holiday

السؤال والإجابة عن إجازتك الماضية

Question

- Where did you go on holiday?
- Did you swim in the sea?
- What did you see there?
- What food did you eat?

Answer

- I went to Sharm El Sheikh.
- Yes, I did.
- I saw dolphins.
- I ate a lot of fish.

3 Responding to news

الاستجابة للأخبار

نرد على الأخبار باختلاف نوعها (سارة / غير سارة) بالتعبيرات الآتية :

Good news

- A: I went to the zoo.
B: That's interesting!
A: We went to see the elephants. It was bath time.
B: How exciting!
A: I went to the beach last weekend.
B: Really?
A: I saw dolphins.
B: Wow!

Bad news

- A: I didn't enjoy the day there.
B: Oh dear!
A: The monkeys were in bed.
B: What a pity!
A: My brother's phone fell in the water.
B: Oh no!

General Exercises on Unit 5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

WB

Fatma got a new laptop.

Fatma : My father bought me a new laptop.

Marwa : 1. !

Fatma : Yes, but I broke it while I was playing some games.

Marwa : 2. ?

Fatma : No, he didn't buy me another one.

Marwa : 3. ! What did he do?

Fatma : He asked an engineer to repair it.

Marwa : 4. ?

Fatma : Yes, he repaired it. It works well now.

Marwa : 5. !

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

- We swam in the sea and played on the
a. beach b. tent c. river d. castle
- I met Ali when I was holiday in Germany.
a. in b. on c. with d. by
- The of the waterfall was fantastic.
a. desert b. beach c. view d. castle
- There was a beautiful view of the city from the of the tower.
a. project b. hotel c. tape d. top
- I climbed a high last year.
a. beach b. mountain c. forest d. river
- I couldn't swim in the sea because it was
a. windy b. calm c. warm d. sunny
- Bats usually live in in the mountains.
a. walls b. flats c. caves d. clouds
- Maher always reads car
a. wheels b. advertisements c. tyres d. seats

Language

9. How did you to school today?
a. went b. going c. goes d. go
10. When I eight, I visited the Pyramids.
a. were b. am c. is d. was
11. What did you for dinner last night?
a. ate b. eat c. eating d. eats
12. I a horse in the desert last month.
a. rode b. rides c. riding d. ride
13. The tourists camped in the desert and in a tent!
a. sleep b. slept c. sleeps d. sleeping
14. you and your family stay in a hotel last summer?
a. Does b. Are c. Did d. Do
15. I a picnic yesterday.
a. had b. has c. have d. having

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I visit my family in Canada last year. (.....)
2. They don't travel by car. They went on foot. (.....)
3. She didn't wear a coat because it is a very hot day. (.....)
4. I spend a wonderful time in Paris ten years ago. (.....)
5. We will go to Siwa in 2015. (.....)
6. What food did you ate? (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A visit to Paris"

[محتاج عنه في آخر الوحدة]

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- When did you visit Paris?
- Was the food there delicious?
- Did you visit the River Seine?
- With whom did you travel?
- What places did you visit?
- Did you like the Louvre?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I visited Paris with
- We visited the Eiffel Tower.
- We had a picnic in the Luxembourg Gardens.
- We saw the art at the Louvre.
- I ate
- We went on a boat on the River Seine.

Paragraphs

فقرات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

1. My last weekend (Lessons 1 & 2)

I always remember my last weekend. It was fun. We went to Hurghada. The weather was nice. We enjoyed the beautiful beach. We stayed in a holiday flat by the beach. We had a wonderful view from the windows. I saw dolphins in the sea. We swam every day. We visited famous places. I bought many souvenirs for my friends.

2. What did I do last summer?

(Lessons 3 & 4)

Last summer, I went to Sharm El Sheikh. I went there with my family. The weather was wonderful. The beaches were very interesting. I made sandcastles and swam in the sea. I camped next to a big mountain. We went shopping every day. I bought nice souvenirs for my friends. Really, the place was attractive.

3. A visit to Paris (General Exercises)

I visited Paris with my family last year. We had a wonderful time. It's a great city for a holiday. There was so much to see and do. I ate many kinds of food. We visited the Eiffel Tower. We went on a boat on the River Seine. We saw the art at the Louvre. We bought souvenirs for our friends. It was a fantastic holiday.

4. A journey I went on (Al Azhar)

Last week, I travelled to Aswan. My father bought the tickets. We travelled by train. The train left Cairo at 10 o'clock. I enjoyed the view from the window and I saw the Nile.

5. A day on the beach (Test)

We went to the beach last weekend. When we arrived there, it was very windy. The sea was high. Then the wind stopped. The sea became calm. We swam in the wonderful water. We sat on the beach. We ate sandwiches. We made sandcastles. We flew kites. We went fishing. There were many kinds of fish. We saw dolphins. It was a wonderful day.



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- The speaker went to
a. Alexandria b. Fayoum c. Sinai d. Aswan
- The speaker went there with his
a. family b. brother c. father d. friend

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Samah : Where did you spend your holiday?

Mariam :

2- Karim :

Ahmed : I went to Sharm El Sheikh with my family.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- It's very hard to live in the
a. hotel b. desert c. village d. house
- Can you a bike?
a. ride b. lead c. drive d. fly
- What did you on your last holiday?
a. did b. does c. do d. done
- Can you when we took this photo?
a. remind b. repair c. redo d. remember
- Mona got the best mark in the test.
a. next b. last c. following d. tomorrow
- Who with to see the doctor?
a. went b. go you c. did you go d. gone

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Every summer, Heba visits her uncle who lives in Alexandria. His name is Mohammed. He is a doctor. He lives with his wife and two children. He lives in a big flat. His children are called Adel and Ahmed. Every morning, Mohammed takes Heba and his family for a swim in the sea. They go there by car. Adel and Ahmed like swimming. Heba doesn't like swimming very much. She spends her time playing handball with her uncle's wife. Heba likes her uncle's wife because she is nice. Mohammed likes sleeping on the beach.

A. Answer the following questions:

- Where does Heba's uncle live?
.....
- How many children has he got?
.....
- What does Mohammed like doing on the beach?
.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Heba likes
a. swimming b. sleeping c. playing handball d. eating
- Heba visits her uncle every
a. summer b. winter c. autumn d. spring

E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

محباب عنه قبل الاختبار

A journey you went on

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| - When did you go on a journey? | - Who went with you? |
| - What places did you enjoy seeing? | - Was it a nice journey? |
| | يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية: |
| - Last week, I travelled to | - bought our tickets. |
| - The train left at | - I enjoyed the view of |
| - It was a wonderful journey. | |



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- Ramy went to last summer.
a. Cairo b. Giza c. Aswan d. Alexandria
- He in the sea.
a. played b. swam c. ate d. slept
- He played on the
a. sea b. garden c. beach d. house
- He stayed at a
a. house b. hotel c. flat d. street

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

WB

Ramy and Rahma are talking about Ramy's last holiday.

Ramy : I went to Alexandria last week.

Rahma : 1. !

Ramy : When we arrived, it was raining.

Rahma : 2. ?

Ramy : We didn't want to swim in the sea.

Rahma : 3. ?

Ramy : Then the rain stopped and we went on a boat trip.

Rahma : 4. !

Ramy : I bought this souvenir for you.

Rahma : 5.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Yesterday Basem and his brother Kareem decided to go on holiday. They travelled to Luxor by plane. At half past ten, they went to the airport. An hour later, the plane began to fly. Kareem read Al Ahram newspaper and slept. It fell down and Basem picked it up. He read it for a while, then he looked through the window and saw many beautiful things. The land was green. When they arrived in Luxor, they took a taxi to their hotel. They visited the Karnak Temple and Luxor Temple. They enjoyed the ancient Egyptian arts. They were of wonderful colours. In the evenings, they went to the cinema. It was a nice holiday. They returned to Cairo by plane, too.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What places did Basem and Kareem visit in Luxor?

2. Where did they stay in Luxor?

3. When did the plane begin to fly?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. read the newspaper.

- a. Only Basem b. Only Kareem
c. Both Basem and Kareem d. No one

5. Basem and Kareem went back to Cairo

- a. by taxi b. on foot c. by bus d. by plane

6. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the

- a. plane b. newspaper c. holiday d. airport

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. visit Egypt every year to enjoy the fine weather.

- a. Farmers b. Drivers c. Tourists d. Nurses

2. We went a boat trip last week.

- a. in b. from c. with d. on

3. The sign says, "Put your in the bin."

- a. litter b. letter c. car d. tree

4. When we went to the London Eye, we went on a

- a. drive b. ride c. swim d. skip

5. Ahmed an expensive mobile yesterday.
a. buy b. buys c. bought d. buying
6. We visit the temple last week.
a. don't b. didn't c. weren't d. haven't
7. A: Did you watch TV? B: Yes, I
a. did b. do c. didn't d. don't
8. Last year, we went to Aswan and bought some to remember the places we visited.
a. prizes b. awards c. presents d. souvenirs
9. I went to the shops, but they were
a. closed b. close c. near d. open
10. I learnt French and English at a school.
a. music b. sports c. language d. cars

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Last summer, I travel to Egypt because I wanted to learn Arabic. (.....)
2. I have a wonderful time in Alex last week. (.....)
3. I were in London for two weeks. (.....)
4. Did you swim in the sea tomorrow? (.....)

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

A day on the beach

[مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار]

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الاسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- When did you go there?
- What was the weather like?
- Did you go fishing?
- With whom did you go there?
- What did you do on the beach?
- Was the day nice?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I went to the beach last
- When we arrived there, it was very
- We swam in the wonderful water.
- We made sandcastles.
- We played
- It was a day.

New Hello!

6 UNIT

Let's eat!



Objectives

Reading:

A recipe; reviews of a dish; a text about healthy snacks; a text about food in Africa.

Writing:

A paragraph describing a picture; an online review of a café.

Listening:

A conversation about what food there is; an interview about healthy drinks; a conversation in a café.

Speaking:

Asking and answering about food in a picture; giving advice; ordering food in a café.

Language:

Countable and uncountable nouns; *should* and *shouldn't* for advice.

Life Skills:

Decision making; problem solving

Issues:

Preventative health



Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 54 - 57 WB pages 109-110

Key Vocabulary

recipe
ingredients
teaspoon
saucerpan
fridge

وصفة طهي
مكونات أكلة
(مقدار) ملعقة شاي
إناء صغير (طاسة)
ثلاجة

review
boil (ed)
add (ed)
stir (red)

نقشيم
يغلي - يسلق
يضيف
يقرب

Food

biscuits*
cheese
crisps
figs
hummus
nuts
olives
peppers

بسكويات
جبس
رقائق بطاطس مقلية
تين
حمص (طحينة)
مكسرات
زيتون
فلفل (من الخضروات)

raisins
salad
rice pudding
salt
sugar
cinnamon
hot chocolate
coconut

زبيب
سلطة
أرز باللبن
ملح
سكر
قرفة (من التوابل)
شيكولاتة ساخنة
دور الهند

Vocabulary

cupboard
equipment
whole
enough
delicious
online
ready

دولاب
معدات (اسم مفرد)
كامل / كل
كافي
لذيذ
عبر الانترنت
جاهز / فعد

tomatoes
perfect
bowl
share (d)
decide (d)
cook (ed)
prefer (red)

طماطم
رائع / ممتاز
سلطانية
يشترك
يقرر
يطهو
يفضل

Expressions & Prepositions

really easy
a bit boring
Let's + inf
make lunch
It's my favourite
on top

سهل جدا
ممل بعض الشيء
هيا بنا...
تعد طعام العشاء
إنها المفضلة لدي.
على القمة

a cup of
a teaspoon of
put... into
eat on a plate
sit down
with coconut

فجان من
ملعقة شاي من
يضع... في
ياكل من طبق
يجلس
مضاف إليه جوز الهند

Lessons 1 & 2

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present

think
make

يفكر
يعد «يطهو»

Past simple

thought
made

Past Participle

thought
made

Word

delicious
perfect

لذيذ
رائع / ممتاز

Meaning

tasty
excellent

Opposite

terrible
imperfect

فظيف
غير تام

Definitions

add (v)	يضيف	put something together with another thing
biscuit (n)	بسكويت	a sweet snack baked in the oven , usually small, flat and round
cinnamon (n)	قرفة	a sweet spice used in cooking
crisps (n)	رقائق بطاطس مقلية	hard, dry potato pieces that you eat as a snack
fig (n)	تين	a sweet fruit with a purple skin that is very soft inside
raisin (n)	زبيب	a small, dry grape
recipe (n)	وصفة طهي	instructions on how to make a meal
fridge (n)	ثلاجة	a machine that keeps food and drink cold
hummus (n)	طحينة	a soft food made from chickpeas

١- مشبوز
٢- فرن
٣- تابل
٤- وجبة خفيفة
٥- قرمزي
٦- حمص

Language Notes

1) recipe - ingredients - menu

• recipe وصفة طهي

Ex. There are a lot of **recipes** online.

• menu قائمة طعام

Ex. I asked the waiter to give me the **menu**.

• ingredients مكونات أكلة

Ex. There aren't a lot of **ingredients** in rice pudding.

2) It's + صفة + to + inf.

تستخدم هذه الصيغة لوصف طريقة عمل شيء (صنع/ تحضير/ طهي طعام... إلخ)

Ex. You can make pizza. It's **easy** to make.

Ex. I'll cook koshari. It's **quick** to cook.

3) prefer

• prefer + v-ing / to + inf.

يفضل

Ex. I prefer eating rice pudding.

Ex. I prefer to stay home tonight.

4) review - revise

• review (v.) يقيم منتج / كتاب / فيلم

• review (n.) تقييم

• revise يراجع

Ex. You need to revise well before the exam.

Ex. Can you review that mobile?

Ex. Let's read the reviews of the recipe.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Do you know a good _____ for Indian soup?
a. recipe b. menu c. plate d. dish
- It is _____ to ride a bike.
a. easily b. easy c. as easy d. as easily
- I prefer _____ clothes made of cotton.
a. wears b. to wearing c. to wears d. to wear.

Audioscript

SB Page (55)

استمع إلى النصوص



Nadia: Let's make lunch. I think we've got all the food.

Omar: There's some salad⁽¹⁾. Is there any hummus⁽²⁾?Nadia: No, there isn't. But there are some olives⁽³⁾.Omar: There are some peppers⁽⁴⁾, too.Nadia: Good! Is there any cheese⁽⁵⁾?

Omar: Yes, there is. I've got it.

Nadia: What about figs⁽⁶⁾? Are there any figs?

Omar: No! There aren't any figs.

Nadia: There are some raisins⁽⁷⁾.

Omar: That's good.



- ١- سلطة
- ٢- حمص (طحينة)
- ٣- زيتون
- ٤- فلفل
- ٥- جبنة
- ٦- تين
- ٧- زبيب

Say it correctly

• biscuits

• لنطق هذه الكلمة نقسمها إلى نصفين (bis - cuits) وينطق الأخير

(kits) مثل

Reading

SB Page (56)

Roz Bel Laban: Egyptian Rice Pudding*

Ingredients

- 1 cup⁽¹⁾ of rice
- 2 cups of water
- 3 cups of milk
- 1 cup of sugar
- ¼ a cup of raisins
- ¼ a cup of nuts
- ¼ a teaspoon⁽²⁾ of cinnamon⁽³⁾

Instructions

1. Put the rice and water in a saucepan⁽⁴⁾.
2. Boil⁽⁵⁾ the rice and water for 20 minutes.
3. Add⁽⁶⁾ the milk slowly as you stir⁽⁷⁾.
4. Add the sugar and stir again.
5. Put the rice pudding⁽⁸⁾ into bowls⁽⁹⁾.
6. Put the raisins, cinnamon and nuts on top.
7. Put the rice pudding in the fridge⁽¹⁰⁾.



- ١- فليجان
- ٢- مقدار ملعقة
- ٣- قرفة
- ٤- إناء صغير
- ٥- يغلي
- ٦- يضيف
- ٧- يقلب
- ٨- أرز باللبن
- ٩- سلطانية
- ١٠- ثلاجة

Say it correctly

- pudding (book) لاحظ ان الصوت الملون (u) ينطق مثل (oo) في كلمة
- bowl (show) ينطق الصوت (ow) كما ينطق الجزء الملون من الفعل

SB Page (57)

Reviews of a recipe

★★★★★
- Really⁽¹⁾ easy!
- This is a great recipe⁽²⁾.
- It's really easy to make.
- There aren't a lot of ingredients⁽³⁾ and it's very quick to cook.
Fawzi

★★★
- OK, but a bit boring⁽⁴⁾.
- I liked this rice pudding, but it isn't my favourite. I think there are too many raisins. I don't like them. I prefer⁽⁵⁾ rice pudding with coconut⁽⁶⁾.
Hana

★★★★★
- Perfect⁽⁷⁾!
- There are a lot of rice pudding recipes online, but this is my favourite. It's easy to make and there's enough rice pudding for the whole family⁽⁸⁾. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe, but I like sweet food⁽⁹⁾.
Nabila

★★
- Not like my mum's rice pudding!
- My mum's rice pudding is delicious⁽¹⁰⁾, but this rice pudding isn't very good.
- There's too much sugar and there aren't enough other ingredients.
Salem

- ١- حقا
- ٢- وصفة طهي
- ٣- مقادير اكلة
- ٤- ممل بعض الشئ
- ٥- يفضل
- ٦- جوز الهند
- ٧- رائع
- ٨- لكل العائلة
- ٩- طعام حلو
- ١٠- لذيذ

Say it correctly

- recipe ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل الجزء الملون من كلمة
- (letter) مع نطق حرف (e) الأخير

Mrs Amal has a lot of friends. Today, she is cooking for ten people. She has enough plates for people to eat on, but she does not have enough chairs, so her friend brings some. Now all the food is ready, but there is fish and rice for fifteen people, not ten! She has too much fish and rice. She decides to ask five more people but they can't all sit down. There are too many people and not enough chairs!



Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sara is talking to Mona about a recipe they found on the internet.

Sara : Did you see the recipe for rice pudding on TV yesterday?

Mona : ①

Sara : What do you think of it?

Mona : ②

Sara : I don't think it's good.

Mona : ③

Sara : I think it has too many raisins.

Mona : ④

Sara : ⑤ Coconut is really delicious.

Mona : Try it and I hope your children will like it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- You can learn a lot about food recipes
a. online b. line c. fine d. outline SB
- Many people have rice after they eat koshari. الفيوم / اطسا 2023
a. cinnamon b. pudding c. raisins d. figs
- We ate food. It was wonderful. أسبوط / منعلوط 2023
a. bad b. poisonous c. delicious d. ugly
- What are the of koshari? دمياط 2023
a. things b. snakes c. pieces d. ingredients
- are unhealthy food. الشرقية / الحسينية 2021
a. Crisps b. Vegetables c. Fruits d. Nuts

6. Which of these is not a cooking verb?

- a. prefer b. boil c. stir d. add

7. Put rice and water in a before making rice pudding. الزقادي / المنزه 2021

- a. bag b. teaspoon c. saucepan d. cup

8. The for making pizza is very easy. العربية / البسطة 2021

- a. cookie b. recipe c. menu d. list

9. Which of the following is not an ingredient? الأزهر الشريف / التفرقة 2022

- a. rice b. nuts c. raisins d. fridge

Bit by Bit Exercises

10. I didn't like the film. It was boring.

- a. a bit b. great c. small d. nice

11. is my favourite food.

- a. Chart b. Cheese c. Chess d. Choice

12. He sugar into his coffee and drank it.

- a. ate b. boiled c. stirred d. cooked

13. are dried grapes.

- a. Milk b. Nuts c. Crisps d. Raisins

14. This newspaper shows a/an of the new film of that actor.

- a. show b. ingredient c. review d. recipe

15. Add one of sugar to the milk, please.

- a. pot b. teaspoon c. bowl d. pan

16. is a sweet spice that is used in cooking.

- a. Salt b. Rice c. Water d. Cinnamon

17. You need a cup rice to make Roz Bel Laban.

- a. of b. with c. in d. from

18. the water before you put the tea bag.

- a. Share b. Freeze c. Boil d. Cut

19. I'm tired. I prefer at home.

- a. stay b. to stay c. stayed d. to staying

20. Mum is putting the rice pudding bowls now.

- a. into b. from c. under d. at

Language

Countable & Uncountable nouns

Countable nouns:

الاسماء التي تعد إما أن تأتي مفردة فيسبها (a / an) أو تأتي جمع دون إضافة (s / es) أو تأتي جمع دون إضافة (s / es - ies - ves) أو تأتي جمع دون إضافة (s / es - ies - ves).

تكوين الجمع من الأسماء التي تعد:

1- إما بإضافة **s** لآخر الاسم: book → books

2- أو بإضافة **es** لآخر الاسم إذا انتهى بالحروف الموضحة في الشكل المقابل:



bus → buses beach → beaches

3- أو بإضافة **ies** إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف (y) وكان قبله حرف ساكن حيث يحذف (y) أما إذا سبق حرف (y) حرف متحرك لا يحذف ويضاف (ies) فقط.

y + حرف ساكن
candy → candies

y + حرف متحرك
boy → boys

4- أو بإضافة **ves** لآخر الاسم إذا انتهى بـ (f / fe) حيث تحذف كما يلي:

knife → knives loaf → loaves

هناك أسماء شاذة لا تتبع القاعدة ولها جمع خاص بها تحفظ كما هي:

mouse → mice ox → oxen

man → men woman → women

الاسماء التي لا تعد لا تجمع ولا تسبها (a / an) ويأتي بعدها فعل لفاعل مفرد (v + s / is / was / has / does)

Ex. Cheese is my favourite food.

احفظ الجدول الآتي للأطعمة التي تعد والأطعمة التي لا تعد.

Countable food nouns أسماء أطعمة تعد		Uncountable food nouns أسماء أطعمة لا تعد	
مفرد	جمع	مفرد دائماً	جمع
a crisp	crisps	cheese	جبن
واحدة رقائق بطاطس مقرية		رقائق بطاطس مقرية	
a biscuit	biscuits	bread	خبز
واحدة بسكويت		بسكويت	
a nut	nuts	fish	لحم سمك
حبة مكسرات		مكسرات	
a vegetable	vegetables	chicken	لحم دجاج
خضار		خضروات	
a salad	salads	pasta	مكرونه
سلطة		سلطات	

Lessons 1 & 2

a carrot	جزرة	carrots	جزر	rice	أرز
a potato	ثمرة بطاطس	potatoes	بطاطس	koshari	كشري
a tomato	ثمرة طماطم	tomatoes	طماطم	meat	لحم
an apple	تفاحة	apples	تفاح	salt	ملح
an egg	بيضة	eggs	بيض	milk	لبن
a fig	واحدة تين	figs	تين	hummus	حمص (طحينة)
an olive	واحدة زيتون	olives	زيتون	sugar	سكر
a pepper	واحدة فلفل	peppers	فلفل	oil	زيت
a raisin	واحدة زبيب	raisins	زبيب	soup	حساء «شورية»

Check

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- There much water on the floor of the bathroom.
a. are b. is c. were d. have
- Vegetables good for our health.
a. are b. is c. was d. have

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- The bread you bought were fresh. (.....)
- Sugar are harmful to health. (.....)
- There is not enough ingredients in that recipe. (.....)

1 some & any

بعض وأي

تستخدم **some** بمعنى «بعض» في الجملة المثبتة مع الأسماء التي تعد (الجمع) والأسماء التي لا تعد:

Ex. She bought **some** nuts / meat.

تستخدم **some** في السؤال (للعرض/لطلب)

Ex. Would you like **some** tea?

Ex. Can I have **some** juice, please?

تستخدم **any** بمعنى «أي» في الجملة المنفية وفي السؤال مع الأسماء التي تعد والتي لا تعد:

Ex. I don't have **any** apples / rice.

Ex. Did you buy **any** pens / pasta?

some تستخدم مع		any تستخدم مع	
جملة مثبتة	سؤال (عرض / طلب)	جملة منفية	سؤال

2 There is - isn't / are - aren't

يوجد / لا يوجد

Ex. There **is** a printer / water on the table.

Ex. There **aren't** any printers on the table.

Ex. There **isn't** any water on the floor.

انظر الشرح السابق في قواعد الوحدة الرابعة.

3 a lot of lots of كثير من

نستخدم (في الإثبات) أمام الأسماء التي تعد في صيغة الجمع، وكذلك أمام الأسماء التي لا تعد:

Ex. We have a lot of / lots of raisins.

Ex. She bought a lot of / lots of chocolate.

4 enough كافٍ

نستخدم (enough) بمعنى كافٍ قبل الاسم الذي يعد في صيغة الجمع أو قبل الاسم الذي لا يعد.

Ex. There are enough cakes for all the students.

Ex. There is (not) enough water.

5 too many كثير جدًا (للعدد) too much كثير جدًا (للكمية)

نستخدم (too many) مع الأسماء التي تعد في صيغة الجمع بمعنى (كثير جدًا أكثر من اللازم).

Ex. There are too many biscuits in the fridge.

نستخدم (too much) مع الأسماء التي لا تعد بمعنى (كثير جدًا أكثر من اللازم).

Ex. There is too much cheese on the table.



as much / many as

- نستخدم as .. as إذا تساوى الشيئين في الكمية أو العدد ووردت هذه الجملة في امتحان إدارة تلا بالمنوفية.

- He likes reading as (some) as he likes computer games.

Answer much

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. there any hummus?

a. Is b. Are c. Were d. Am

2. There are raisins in the fridge.

a. much b. a c. any d. some

3. Crisps have too salt and fat.

a. any b. some c. much d. many

Lessons 1 & 2

4. There are peppers, too.

a. any b. a

5. I don't like these cakes because they have sugar in them.

a. too much b. too many c. enough d. a lot

6. there any cheese?

a. Are b. Were c. Does d. Is

7. There is not rain for orange trees to grow in the desert.

a. too few b. too many c. enough d. a lot of

8. There are people in this café. Let's go to another one.

a. most b. too many c. too much d. any

9. There butter in the kitchen.

a. is any b. are some c. is some d. are any

10. There aren't figs in the fridge.

a. some b. much c. a d. any

11. There's rice for you all.

a. enough b. any c. many d. a lot

12. We don't eat sweet.

a. some b. any c. many d. an

Bit by Bit Exercises

13. There's milk in the bottle.

a. some b. a c. any d. many

14. Fruit juice can have sugar in it.

a. any b. many c. an d. a lot of

15. A: Are there nuts in the cupboard? B: Yes, there are.

a. much b. a lot c. any d. a

16. How sheep did you see, Ali?

a. much b. many c. a lot of d. any

17. A: Have you got any money? B: No, I have got money.

a. some b. a lot of c. any d. no

18. There is usually pollution in cities.

a. much b. many c. a lot d. any

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB & Exams

- There aren't enough milk to make hot chocolate. (الكمية: 2022)
- There are too much cakes in that shop. (كثير القليل: 2003)
- There is food enough in the fridge. (الكثرة: 2023)
- To many sugar is bad for our bodies. (الكمية: 2023)
- There's too many milk in the fridge. (الكثرة: 2021)
- There aren't some boys in the class. (الكثرة: 2023)

Bit by Bit Exercises

- Are there any flour? (.....)
- Is there any sandals in that shop? (.....)
- There isn't any olives in the fridge. (.....)
- How many mans did you meet? (.....)
- How often water did the students drink? (.....)

Speaking

Asking and answering about food

السؤال والإجابة عن الطعام

Question

- Is there any + اسم مفرد?
هل يوجد أي؟
- Are there any + اسم جمع?
هل يوجد أي؟

Answer

- Yes, there is some / little / much / enough...
- No, there isn't any
- Yes, there are some / many / enough
- No, there aren't any

General Exercises

Lessons 1 & 2

on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Malak and Heba are talking about the food they like.

Malak : Hello, Heba. What food do you like best?

Heba : Hello, Malak. ①

Malak : Why do you like pizza?

Heba : ②

Malak : I know it is delicious but it isn't healthy.

Heba : ③

Malak : You should eat vegetables and fruit.

Heba : ④

Malak : No, we haven't any now, but we can buy some from the market.

Heba : OK. ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

- It's important to water before you drink it.
a. add b. boil c. eat d. throw
- Mai much salt to the food, so it was salty.
a. added b. designed c. boiled d. cooked
- Cakes and chocolate have a lot of
a. salt b. peppers c. water d. sugar
- Roz Bel Laban is Egyptian
a. crisps b. rice pudding c. biscuits d. tomatoes
- is a natural and healthy drink. (شجرة: 2023)
a. Raisin b. Pepper c. Cinnamon d. Nut
- A is a round container that is used to cook things.
a. saucepan b. glass c. teaspoon d. fork
- I made rice pudding following a from the internet. (الوصفة: 2021)
a. menu b. list c. recipe d. rule
- Mum made that food using fresh (المكونات: 2021)
a. menus b. types c. buildings d. ingredients

Language

9. Could you lend me money, please?
a. some b. many c. a lot d. any
10. Koshari hasn't meat in it.
a. some b. lots c. many d. any
11. The oil we have is not , we need more.
a. many b. enough c. lot d. few

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. We don't have many rice. (الخبز / العجوة 2021)
2. I don't like that food. There is too many salt. (الزيت / الملح 2021)
3. Could you give me any water? (.....)
4. We didn't buy some juice. (.....)
5. Are there some tomatoes in the fridge? (الفاكهة / الخضراوات 2023)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

The food you like in your kitchen

(محب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What food do you like in your kitchen? - Do you like crisps? Why? Why not?
- What are the healthy foods you like? - Why do you like fruit?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I like kitchen. - I fresh
- I don't like - Doctors say

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 58 - 60 WB pages 111 - 112

Key Vocabulary

healthy
snack
fat

صحي
وجبة خفيفة
دهون

cakes
fizzy drinks

كعك
مشروبات غازية

استمع إلى المفردات



Vocabulary

illness
weight
sweet
meal
traditional
spices
piece
pasta

مرض
وزن
حلو المذاق
وجبة
تقليدي
توابل
قطعة
مكرونات

onion
cooking pot
taste (d) (n)
cause (d)
touch (ed)
dry (ied)
try (ied)

بصل
إناء للطهي
يتذوق/طعم
يسبب
يلمس
يجفف
يجرب (طعام)

Names of meals

tagine
nyama na irio
stew

طاجين (أكلة مغربية)
نياما نا إيرو
(أكلة من كينيا تتكون من لحم و بطاطس)
يخني
(أكلة من اللحم و الخضراوات والتوابل)

koshari
beans
kapenta
shepherd's pie

كشري
فول
كابنتا (أكلة سمك من زيمبابوي)
فطيرة الراعي
(أكلة من اللحم والخضار والبطاطس في إنجلترا)

Expressions & Prepositions

It's a good idea
go to bed
feel ill
see a doctor
It's the best way to....
stop + v- ing
It's OK to...

إنها فكرة جيدة
يذهب للنوم
يشعر بالمرض
يزور طبيب
إنها أفضل طريقة ل....
يتوقف عن....
لا بأس أن....

catch fish
Be careful!
look after
cook.... with
come from
for dinner
write about
good / bad for

يصطاد السمك
كن حريصا
يعتنى بـ
يطهو.... مع....
يأتي من (بلده...)
على العشاء
يكتب عن
جيد / سيء لـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present

grow
catch

Past simple

grew
caught

Past Participle

grown
caught

Word	Meaning	Opposite
hungry	جائع	starving
healthy	صحي	full
wonderful	رائع	unhealthy
sweet	حلو	horrible
		salty

Definitions

bean (n)	فول	a long, narrow green vegetable that you usually eat cooked ¹
cake (n)	كعك	a sweet food that you bake in the oven
fat (n)	دهون	natural oils in food
fizzy drinks (n)	مشروبات غازية	drinks that have bubbles ² and a lot of sugar
snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة	a small amount of food that you eat between meals
stew (n)	يخني	a meal made with meat and vegetables in one pot ³

Language Notes

① Everyone + singular verb

يأتي بعد الضمير everyone فعل لفاعل مفرد:

Ex. Everyone **likes** cakes.

② a day = daily = every day

تأتي هذه الكلمات بمعنى (يومياً):

Ex. You should drink a glass of milk **a day**.

③ catch

يأتي الفعل catch بمعنى مختلفة حسب ما يأتي بعده من كلمات:

- catch fish يصطاد سمك
- catch a thief يقبض على لص
- catch the bus يلتحق بالأنوبيس
- catch a ball يلتقط الكرة

④ stew

- stew (n) يخني (حضروات مع اللحم تُطهى في طاجن على نار هادئة)

Ex. Mum's making a **stew** for lunch.

- stew (v) (ed) يطهو طعام ببطء على نار هادئة

Ex. You need to **stew** the meat for two hours.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Everyone at the party really happy.
a. were b. had c. are d. was
- Hossam takes the medicines three times
a. day b. a day c. days d. on day
- My dad always fish from the nearby lake.
a. hunts b. gives c. catches d. makes



Reading

SB Page (58)

استمع إلى الصوت



Healthy Snacks*

Everyone loves **snacks**¹! But some snacks are bad for us. What is the best way to enjoy **healthy**² snacks?

Crisps³ and cakes

It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies.



- 1- وجبات خفيفة
- 2- صحي
- 3- رقائق بطاطس
- مقلية
- 4- رائع
- 5- طعام
- 6- يومياً
- 7- فول
- 8- دهون
- 9- قمص (طبخية)
- 10- فلفل
- 11- عصير فواكه

Fantastic⁴ fruit

Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us and most people like the sweet **taste**⁵. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit **a day**⁶.

Beans⁷ and vegetables

Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or **fat**⁸. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. Snacks like **hummus**⁹ with carrot and **pepper**¹⁰ are delicious.



Be careful!

We should be careful, even with healthy foods. **Fruit juice**¹¹ has got a lot of sugar so we should not drink too much of it. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.



Say it correctly

* snack (black) في هذه الكلمة مثل نطقه في كلمة (ack) ينطق الصوت

Food in Africa

Egypt has a lot of interesting food, but my favourite **meal** is koshari. It is a delicious meal with rice, **pasta** and tomatoes. It is very popular. Many people like it.

Marwa

I live in **Morocco**. Tagine is a **traditional** meal from my country. It is a **stew** with meat, vegetables, fruit and **spices**. The **taste** is amazing! The name tagine comes from the **cooking pot** for this food.

Hamza

In **Kenya**, people often make nyama na irio for dinner. It is a stew with meat and potatoes. It is wonderful! I love eating it after school when I am very hungry!

Makena

Kapenta is a popular **type** of fish in **Zimbabwe**. We **catch** the fish from the lake and dry it in the sun. Kapenta is very good for you, so you can eat it every day. We often cook it with tomatoes and **onions**. It is great!

Bradley

Say it correctly

* stew

ينطق الصوت الملون (ew) تماما مثل نطق كلمة (you)

- ١- قارة أفريقيا
- ٢- وجبة
- ٣- مكرونة
- ٤- دولة المغرب
- ٥- تقليدي
- ٦- يخني
- ٧- توابل
- ٨- طعام
- ٩- إناء طهي
- ١٠- دولة كينيا
- ١١- نوع
- ١٢- دولة زيمبابوي
- ١٣- بصطاد
- ١٤- بصل



Audioscript

SB Page (59)

Presenter : It's important to eat the right things but we shouldn't **forget** about what we drink. Dr Randa Zaki is here to tell us more. Dr Randa, what should we drink?

Dr Randa : Well, we should drink a lot of water. Water is **great**, because it hasn't got any fat or sugar.

Presenter : OK, so we should drink more water. And which drinks are bad for us?

Dr Randa : Some drinks have a lot of sugar. We shouldn't drink these because they are bad for our bodies and they are bad for our teeth.



١- ينسى

٢- رائعة

Presenter : So we shouldn't have drinks with a lot of sugar... Some **fizzy drinks** don't have any sugar. Are they OK?

Dr Randa : No, fizzy drinks are always bad for our teeth, **even** when they don't have sugar.

Presenter : So we shouldn't have fizzy drinks. Are any drinks good for our teeth?

Dr Randa : Yes, milk is good for our teeth. We should try to drink a glass of milk every day.



٣- مشروبات غازية

٤- حتى



Lessons 3 & 4

WB Page (112)

Boy 1 : In England people often have a traditional meal called shepherd's pie. We make it with meat, carrots and other vegetables with potatoes on top. It is wonderful. My favourite meal is shepherd's pie, and then chocolate ice cream!



Say it correctly

* shepherd

لا ينطق حرف (h) في هذه الكلمة

Videoscript

SB Page (58)

Narrator : What did you eat for lunch today? Did you eat some **falafel** or a chicken salad?

Or **perhaps** you enjoyed some delicious meat and rice.

And what did you drink? Maybe you had some water, a cup of tea or some nice orange juice.

The food that we eat today is similar to the food that the ancient Egyptians ate a long time ago.

The ancient Egyptians ate a lot of bread. **In fact**, people believe that the ancient Egyptians made the first bread in the world.

The ancient Egyptians used the land near the river Nile to grow a lot of different fruit and vegetables.

They also grew enough **wheat** to make bread.

Bread was a very important food in ancient Egypt.

- ١- فلافل «طعمية»
- ٢- ربما
- ٣- في الحقيقة
- ٤- قمح

Scientists found some bread in the tomb^(٥) of Mentuhotep the Second in Luxor. It was 4,000 years old!

Pharaohs and other important people ate bread with a lot of fruit, such as figs and dates^(٦). They also had it with honey^(٧).

Bread is still important today. From this bread in Egypt today... to bagels^(٨) in the USA... and baguettes^(٩) in France, people all around the world love it at all times of the day.

٥- مقبرة
٦- بلخ
٧- عسل
٨- خبز البيجل «خبز امريكي»
٩- الخبز الفرنسي

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- We should look our teeth.
a. for b. to c. from d. after
- The name tagine comes from the pot for this food.
a. playing b. writing c. cooking d. swimming
- Vegetables and fruit are food.
a. not good b. healthy c. bad d. unhealthy
- is the opposite of salty.
a. Good b. Sweet c. Wonderful d. Healthy
- We usually eat between meals.
a. snacks b. weight c. dinner d. onions
- We shouldn't have a lot of drinks.
a. good b. careful c. fizzy d. healthy
- Tagine is a meal in Morocco. It is old.
a. modern b. unhealthy c. bad d. traditional

Bit by Bit Exercises

- My favourite is koshari.
a. sport b. game c. meal d. pudding
- I like my food with a lot of They make it delicious.
a. flowers b. spices c. trees d. spaces
- People in Kenya often have meat for dinner.
a. straw b. show c. star d. stew

- You should eat two pieces of fruit
a. day b. in day c. a day d. daytime
- Most people like the sweet of sugar.
a. test b. list c. taste d. toast
- Koshari has got rice and in it.
a. pasta b. dates c. meat d. potatoes
- Too much sugar is bad our bodies.
a. from b. for c. with d. of
- If you feel ill, you should a doctor.
a. look b. help c. see d. watch
- You shouldn't eat too many
a. cakes b. carrots c. apples d. oranges

Language

Giving advice: should / shouldn't

(إعطاء النصيحة بـ (يلبغى أن - يلغى ألا)

نستخدم (should / shouldn't) لإعطاء النصيحة ودائمًا ما يأتي بعدهما مصدر الفعل:

مصدر الفعل (should / shouldn't + inf. + ضمير / فاعل (مفرد / جمع)

should

should + inf. نستخدم

Ex. You should eat a lot of fruit and vegetables.

shouldn't

shouldn't + inf. نستخدم

Ex. You shouldn't eat too many crisps and cakes.

لطلب النصيحة نستخدم:

Should + فاعل + inf.? (هل...؟)

Ex. Should I clean my teeth?

Yes, you should. الإجابة في الإثبات No, you shouldn't. الإجابة في النفي

٢- سؤال (بكلمة استفهام): should + فاعل + inf.? (كلمة استفهام)

Ex. What should we eat?

لاحظ استخدام الأفعال الآتية بعد (should / shouldn't)

be - have - do

Ex. You should be more careful.

Ex. Ahmed should have the books with him today.

Ex. You should do your homework after school.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- We drink a glass of milk every day.
a can't b should c couldn't d shouldn't
- We have drinks with a lot of sugar.
a should b have to c must d shouldn't
- Lama feels ill. She see a doctor.
a can't b shouldn't c should d mustn't
- We drink too much fruit juice.
a should b shouldn't c can d not
- You always clean your teeth before you go to bed.
a should b mustn't c shouldn't d can't
- You should a lot of fruit and vegetables.
a eat b to eat c eating d eats
- You eat a lot of salt.
a should b shouldn't c can d must
- The saucepan is very hot. You touch it.
a shouldn't b should c haven't d must

Bit by Bit Exercises

- We eat fresh food.
a shouldn't b mustn't c have d should
- We eat too many biscuits.
a must b should c shouldn't d can
- Hany eat too many snacks. It's unhealthy.
a has b shouldn't c should d was
- What I eat for lunch?
a am b are c should d have

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB & Exams

- We should eat too many crisps and sweets.
- Should I having tea with much sugar?
- You shouldn't eat healthy food.
- She should to clean her teeth in the morning.

Bit by Bit Exercises

- When should I coming home every day?
- She is very tired. She shouldn't have some rest.
- Kamal should drinks a lot of water.
- Omar should come home very late.

Lessons 3 & 4

Speaking

Asking and answering about good and bad foods

Question

- What food do you like?
- What food don't you like?
- Which snacks are good for you?
- Which snacks are bad for you?

Answer

- I like (cheese).
- I don't like (pizza).
- Vegetables are good for me.
- Chocolate and biscuits are bad for me.

General Exercises

on Lessons 3 & 4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Karim and Hany are talking about good and bad foods.

Karim : What food do you like?

Hany : 1

Karim : 2

Hany : But some snacks are healthy.

Karim : 3

Hany : Vegetables are healthy.

Karim : 4

Hany : Chocolate and biscuits are bad for us.

Karim : Is pizza a good snack?

Hany : 5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

- I don't like spicy foods, they aren't
a. funny b. healthy c. fast d. modern
- is a long, narrow vegetable that you usually eat cooked.
a. Cake b. Bean c. Snack d. Fat

3. Healthy are important for you.
a. snacks b. snakes c. pairs
4. Pepper and cinnamon are
a. pieces b. spaces c. places in Morocco.
5. Tagine is the name of a known
a. sport b. colour c. subject
6. I like food like cakes and chocolate.
a. salty b. sweet c. hot

Language

7. You be late for school.
a. haven't b. have c. should
8. We always eat healthy food.
a. should b. shouldn't c. don't
9. You have much sugar in your tea.
a. shouldn't b. doesn't c. are
10. We eat too many crisps.
a. should b. doesn't c. must

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Amira shouldn't have a rest; she's very tired. (الواجب التحديد) 2023
2. She should to clean her teeth in the morning. (الغالبية: كغير شستر 2021)
3. Heba should eat snacks in the classroom. (الذهنية: صبحا 2023)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

Your favourite meal "Koshari"

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What food do you like best?
- Why do many people like it?
- What ingredients does it have?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My favourite meal is
- I like
- It is very
- It has
- Koshari is very in Egypt

مكتوب سبيل / بلوزم المصنف 2021

- d. diagrams
d. spices
d. meal
d. spicy

الغربية / سبيل 2023

- d. shouldn't
d. mustn't
d. must
d. shouldn't

WB الأهرام الشريف / العربية 2021

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 61 - 63 WB pages 113 - 115

Key Vocabulary

café
unhealthy
customer
menu

مقهى / كافيتريا
غير صحي
زبون
قائمة طعام

chef (Pl. chefs)
waiter
dessert

استمع إلى المفردات



رئيس الطهاة
جرسون (مقدم الطعام)
التحلية (بعد الطعام)

Vocabulary

wall
chicken pizza
fresh
real
basbousa

حائط
بيتزا بالدجاج
طازج
حقيقي
بسبوسة

kunafa
pound
restaurant
hope (d)
visit (ed)

كنافة
جنيه
مطعم
يأمل
يزور

Expressions & Prepositions

Here you are.
look delicious
enjoy..... most
Anything else?
different than usual
look like

تفضل.
يبدو لذيذ
يستمتع بـ..... للغاية
هل تريد شيء آخر؟
مختلف عن المعتاد
يشبه

make sure
on the water
on the beach
on the sea
go back to
look out of the window

يتأكد
في المياه
على الشاطئ
في البحر
يعود إلى
ينظر خارج النافذة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present

choose
cost

يختار
يكلف / يتكلف

Past simple

chose
cost

Past Participle

chosen
cost

Word

Meaning

Opposite

real

حقيقي

true

unreal

غير حقيقي

Language Notes

1 menu - list

• menu قائمة لأنواع الطعام / الوجبات (في مطعم)

Ex. Is there any rice on the menu?

• list قائمة (أسماء / أرقام إلخ)

Ex. Shall I add your name to the list?

② look + adj

• look + adj

يبدو + صفة

Ex. Let's watch that film. It looks nice.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Is there any fish on the ?
a. list b. menu c. waiter d. receipt
- After Hassan had an accident, he looked
a. sad b. sadly c. as sad d. sadder

Audiocscript

SB Page (61)

استمع إلى النصوص



Assistant : Hello. What would you like today?

Customer : I'd like a cheese and tomato pizza⁽¹⁾, please?Assistant : OK. Anything else⁽²⁾?Customer : Yes, a salad⁽³⁾, please.Assistant : Small or large⁽⁴⁾?

Customer : Small, please.

Assistant : And would you like any drinks⁽⁵⁾?Customer : Have you got any fruit juice⁽⁶⁾?

Assistant : Yes, we've got apple juice and orange juice.

Customer : I'd like an orange juice, please.

Assistant : Is that everything?

Customer : Yes, it is.

Assistant : That's 105 pounds⁽⁷⁾, please.

Customer : Thank you, here you are.

- ١- بيتزا
- ٢- أي شيء آخر
- ٣- سلطة
- ٤- كبير
- ٥- مشروبات
- ٦- عصير فواكه
- ٧- جنيهات



Reading

SB Page (62)

City Café

Great visit! ★★★★★

Review by: Sara

I visited this café⁽¹⁾ last weekend with my mum, my dad and my brother, Ashraf. We chose⁽²⁾ this café for lunch because it looked very nice. The walls⁽³⁾ were green and white and there were big

- ١- كافيتريا
- ٢- اخترنا
- ٣- حوائط



Lessons 5 & 6

windows. (I love looking out of the window and watching the city.)
Ashraf and I both had rice⁽⁴⁾ for lunch. I had fish with rice and he had chicken⁽⁵⁾.
My dad had fish with rice, too, and mum had a salad. It's very healthy⁽⁶⁾! We all liked our food.

After lunch, Ashraf and I had desserts⁽⁷⁾. This was the part we enjoyed most! There were a lot of different desserts and they all looked delicious! I chose basbousa⁽⁸⁾ and Ashraf had kunafa⁽⁹⁾.
They were amazing⁽¹⁰⁾!!! 😊

I'd like to visit this café again (very soon)!

- ٤- أرز
- ٥- لحم دجاج
- ٦- صحي
- ٧- التحلية (بعد الطعام)
- ٨- بسبوسة
- ٩- كنافة
- ١٠- رائعة

Waiter : Hello. What would you like today?

You : Hello. Have you got any pizzas?

Waiter : Yes. Small or large?

You : Large, please.

Waiter : What would you like to drink?

You : I'd like some cola, please.

Waiter : Anything else?

You : No, thank you. How much are these?

Waiter : That's 105 pounds, please.

You : Thank you, here you are.



WB Page (114)

- I want to write about an amazing meal⁽¹⁾ I remember. I visited my cousins in Damietta last summer with my dad, mother and sister. They took us to a café for lunch. It was near the beach and it had big windows. (It was wonderful watching the boats on the water.)



- ١- وجبة
- ٢- معتاد
- ٣- لذيذ

- I had my favourite meal, Koshari. I love Koshari but this was different than usual⁽²⁾. It was delicious⁽³⁾. My family and cousins all had fish from the sea! We all liked our food.

- We then all had Egyptian Rice Pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in this recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy.

- It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again (one day)!

A meal which I always remember is fish and rice. At a great restaurant⁽¹⁾ in Alexandria. I went there with my family. The restaurant was very near the sea so the fish was very fresh⁽²⁾. We chose the fish and the chef⁽³⁾ cooked it for us. My parents ate their favourite fish and my brother enjoyed watching the boats on the sea. I hope we can go back to the restaurant again soon.

١- مطعم
٢- طازج
٣- رئيس الطهاة

Say it correctly

* chef

ينطق الحرفين (ch) هنا مثل نطق حرفي (sh) في كلمة (ship)

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Bit by Bit Exercises

- The food is delicious; we must thank the
a. chef b. chief c. menu d. dish
- This restaurant has a of about 50 types of food.
a. list b. dish c. menu d. plate
- I'd like to have basbousa for after lunch, please.
a. dessert b. menu c. desert d. juice
- All the waiters know me. I'm a regular
a. waiter b. customer c. tagine d. chef
- I asked the to bring me some juice.
a. waiter b. water c. cooker d. customer
- We booked two tables at our favourite
a. meal b. menu c. restaurant d. recipe
- Try to eat fruit every day.
a. dirty b. fresh c. unhealthy d. fat
- you are. This is the money you asked for.
a. There b. Hear c. Her d. Here
- If there's a nearby, we could stop for a snack.
a. customer b. menu c. café d. window
- The opposite of "real" is
a. true b. reality c. really d. unreal
- sure the doors are closed before you leave.
a. Do b. Make c. Take d. Stay
- The children like to look of the train windows.
a. out b. into c. over d. under

Speaking

Ordering food in a café

طلب الطعام في مطعم صغير (كافيتريا)

- تستخدم العبارات الآتية عند طلب الطعام في مطعم:

Waiter

- What would you like (to have)?
ماذا تريد (أن تأكل)؟
- Yes. We've got
نعم، لدينا.....
- Here you are.
تفضل.
- Anything else?
هل تريد شيء آخر؟
- Is that everything?
هل ذلك كل ما تريد؟
- That's pounds.
السعر... جنيهًا.

Customer

- Have you got any.....?
هل لديكم أي.....؟
- I'd like to have.
(طعام/ مشروب).
- Yes, I'd like some ...
نعم، أريد بعض... ..
- No, thanks.
لا، شكرًا.
- Yes, it is. How much is it / does it cost?
نعم، كم يتكلف هذا؟
- Here you are the money.

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6

Complete the following dialogue:

A customer is at a restaurant.

Customer : Can I get the menu, please?

Waiter : ① What would you like?

Customer : ②

Waiter : OK! The chicken pizza is delicious.

Customer : Have you got any drinks?

Waiter : Yes, please, We've got orange juice. ③

Customer : Yes, please. ④

Waiter : That's 80 pounds.

Customer : Here you are.

Waiter : ⑤

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

- This restaurant is very famous because it has a wonderful
a. chef b. street c. door d. table

2. The _____ gave me the menu to order my meal.
a doctor b waiter c watcher d nurse
3. Amany chose chicken with rice from the _____.
a customer b menu c café d waiter
4. I love this food. It looks _____.
a bad b terrible c ugly d delicious
5. This restaurant has a lot of _____ every day.
a windows b customers c cafés d walls
6. This restaurant has good kunafa for _____.
a dessert b meal c advice d desert
7. We should eat _____ fruit every day.
a unhealthy b bad c fresh d unreal
8. Are your shoes made of _____ leather or plastic?
a delicious b real c healthy d fresh
9. Your new car _____ expensive. How much is it?
a looks b keeps c takes d gives
10. We'll have lunch in the hotel _____.
a chef b menu c restaurant d lift

3 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

WB
محتاج عنه في آخر الوحدة

A healthy meal

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What do you think of food? - What do you like to eat?
- Who cooks in your family?
- Should we have much salt? Why / Why not?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Food is - I'd like to eat
- Meat, vegetables, and healthy.
- We should salt in our

Review

Vocabulary

fridge	ثلاجة	dessert	التحلية (بعد الطعام)	café	مقهى / كافيتريا
review	مراجعة	fizzy drinks	مشروبات غازية	waiter	خادم
healthy	صحي	recipe	وصفة طهي	chef	رئيس الطهاة
unhealthy	غير صحي	ingredients	مقادير اكلية	boil (ed)	يغلي / يسلق
customer	زبون	teaspoon	مقدار ملعقة شاي	odd (ed)	بضيف
menu	قائمة طعام	saucepan	إناء صغير (طاسة)	stir (red)	يقلب

Food

biscuits	بسكويت	peppers	فلفل (من الخضروات)	hot chocolate	شيكولاته ساخنة
cheese	جب	raisins	زبيب	coconut	دور الهند
crisps	رقائق بطاطس مقلية	salad	سلطة	cakes	كعك
figs	ثين	rice pudding	أرز باللبن	snack	وجبة خفيفة
hummus	حمص (طحينة)	salt	ملح	fat	دهون
nuts	مكسرات	sugar	سكر		
olives	زيتون	cinnamon	قرقة (من التوابل)		

Language

1 Countable & Uncountable Nouns

Countable nouns

اسم مفرد يسبق بـ (a / an)
جمع لا يسبق بـ (a/an) ويضاف إليه (s / es / ies / ves)
a bus → buses
a candy → candies
a loaf → loaves

Uncountable nouns

اسم ليس له جمع ويعامل معاملة المفرد
لا يأتي قبله (a / an) ولا يضاف له (s)
الجمع
water / cheese / milk

some → enough كاف lots of = a lot of كثير من

الكلمات السابقة تأتي أمام الأسماء التي تعد (الجمع) والتي لا تعد في الإثبات:
Ex. I have enough milk / books.
some
a lot of
lots of

تأتي any أمام الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد في السؤال والنفي :

Ex. Have you got any milk / books?

- No, I haven't got any.

Ex. He has got too many books.

- تأتي (too many) أمام الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع).

Ex. I have got too much milk.

- تأتي (too much) أمام الاسم الذي لا يعد.

2) Giving advice: should / shouldn't

نستخدم should للنصيحة بفعل شيء بمعنى (ينبغي أن) ويأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل :

Ex. You should eat healthy food.

نستخدم shouldn't للنصيحة بعدم فعل شيء بمعنى (ينبغي ألا) ويأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل :

Ex. You shouldn't eat much fat.

Speaking

1) Asking and answering about food

السؤال والإجابة عن الطعام

Question

- Is there any + اسم مفرد?

- Are there any + اسم جمع?

Answer

- Yes, there is some / little / much / enough...

- No, there isn't any

- Yes, there are some / many / enough

- No, there aren't any

2) Asking and answering about good and bad foods

السؤال والإجابة عن الأطعمة الجيدة والسيئة

Question

- What food do you like?

- What food don't you like?

- Which snacks are good for you?

- Which snacks are bad for you?

Answer

- I like (cheese).

- I don't like (pizza).

- Vegetables are good for me.

- Chocolate and biscuits are bad for me.

3) Ordering food in a café

Waiter

- What would you like (to have)?

- Yes. We've got

- Here you are.

- Anything else?

- Is that everything?

- That's pounds.

General Exercises

طلب الطعام في مطعم صغير (كافيتريا)

Customer

- Have you got any.....?

- I'd like to have

- Yes, I'd like some

- No, thanks.

- Yes, it is. How much is it / does it cost?

- Here you are the money.

General Exercises on Unit 6

1) Complete the following dialogue:

A customer is ordering food.

Waiter : Hello! What would you like to eat, sir?

Customer : 1)

Waiter : We've got chicken or cheese and tomato pizzas.

Customer : 2)

Waiter : 3)

Customer : No, I don't like any spices.

Waiter : Do you want any drinks?

Customer : 4)

Waiter : Anything else.

Customer : 5)

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

- We fish from the lake.
a. buy b. swim c. catch d. throw
- I had lunch with my friends at a great
a. restaurant b. bank c. library d. theatre
- It's a good to eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day.
a. bowl b. idea c. ingredient d. recipe
- is a cooking verb.
a. Start b. Stand c. Stir d. Store
- The of tagine is amazing! It's my favourite food.
a. test b. last c. fast d. taste
- There are a lot of there.
a. people b. rice c. milk d. sugar

7. I enjoyed watching the boats the sea.
a. about b. for c. on d. with
8. A works at a restaurant.
a. nurse b. teacher c. vet d. chef
9. The restaurant was very near the sea so the fish was very
a. unhealthy b. light c. bad d. fresh
10. Koshari is a popular in Egypt.
a. café b. meal c. pan d. menu
11. Many think that the of rice pudding is easy.
a. review b. list c. recipe d. type

Language

12. We have fizzy drinks.
a. have to b. must c. shouldn't d. should
13. That juice has too sugar in it.
a. few b. many c. any d. much
14. How pieces of fruit should I eat a day?
a. much b. many c. lots d. enough
15. I have a big problem. What I do?
a. should b. have c. am d. was

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Do you need a help? (.....)
2. I'd like a pieces of this cake, please. (.....)
3. Would you like lots coffee? (.....)
4. We should not to talk in the Maths lesson. (.....)
5. Here is an banana for you. (.....)
6. You don't should eat crisps before a meal. (.....)
7. We shouldn't drinks too much fruit juice. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

Food we should or shouldn't eat

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Do doctors give us advice about health? - is it healthy to drink much water?
- Why is unhealthy food bad for the body? - Is it healthy to eat much cake?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Doctors tell us to drink much water. - If you want to be healthy, you must
- Unhealthy food makes us - We must every day.

Paragraphs

Paragraphs

1. The food I like in my kitchen

(Lessons 1 & 2)

I have many kinds of foods in my kitchen. I have meat, chicken, rice and vegetables. I like to have healthy food at home. We all should have a little salt and sugar in our food. Too much salt is not healthy for us. That's why I don't like crisps. Also I like to have fresh fruit. Doctors say that fruit and juice with little sugar are very healthy.

2. My favourite meal "Koshari"

(Lessons 3 & 4)

We have many kinds of foods in Egypt, but I like Koshari the most. It is my favourite meal. It is easy to make. I like it because it has many ingredients. It has rice, pasta, tomatoes and many other spices. I like to have spices in my Koshari. It is very popular. Many people like it.

3. A healthy meal (Lessons 5 & 6)

Food is very important for us. It should be healthy and fresh. I always have vegetables every day. Meat, chicken and potatoes are good for our health. My mother always cooks them for us. I think we all should have little salt in our food. It isn't healthy. A healthy meal shouldn't be too spicy, or too sweet. We need to look after our health and have healthy meals.

4. Food we should or shouldn't eat

(General Exercises)

Some people eat lots of pizzas, sweets, chips, cakes and biscuits. When they get older, they start to have some health problems. But, most of us don't think much about the future. We only think about today. We only think that hamburger tastes better than salad. We think drinks with a lot of sugar are nicer than water. You must eat healthy food and exercise every day.

5. My favourite food (Al Azhar)

There are many kinds of food. Food can be healthy or unhealthy. We should eat healthy food. My favourite foods are salad and meat. I eat salad with each meal because it is very healthy.

6. A meal I remember (Test)

A meal which I always remember is fish and rice. I ate them at a great restaurant in Alexandria. I went there with my family. The restaurant was very near the sea. The fish was very fresh. We chose the fish and the chef cooked it for us. My parents ate their favourite fish. I hope we can go back to this restaurant again soon.



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- The speaker likes to have at lunchtime.
a. beans b. fish c. koshari d. cakes
- The speaker never puts on his fish.
a. rice b. bread c. sugar d. salt

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Waiter : How can I help you?

Customer :

2- Ashraf :

Ziad : My favourite food is fish.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The of this meal doesn't include spices.
a. teaspoon b. recipe c. review d. bowl
- Pizza is a favourite for most children.
a. snack b. drink c. dessert d. spice
- After a long walk, we sat on a to have a rest and a drink.
a. menu b. wall c. café d. window
- Can I have coffee, please?
a. some b. any c. many d. lots
- How often I clean my teeth a day?
a. shouldn't b. have c. should d. are
- I don't need bread. I have enough bread in the kitchen.
a. a b. no article c. an d. the

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Water is very important for lives of people, plants and animals. Water comes from rain. When there is little rain for a long time, some places have a drought. This means that the land becomes very dry. Egypt doesn't always have a lot of rain, so it is important for us to save water. In Egypt, we get our water from the Nile. Because we love our country, we should stop throwing rubbish into the Nile.

A. Answer the following questions:

- Where does water come from?
- Why is it important for the Egyptians to save water?
- When does the land become dry?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What does the underlined word "rubbish" mean?
a. air b. smoke c. letter d. litter
- We should help make the Nile
a. cleaner b. dirtier c. drier d. wetter

E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

Your favourite food

أعجبك عنه قبل الكتابة

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة المقرة الإنشائية:

- Is food always healthy?
- Should we eat healthy food? Why?
- What is your favourite food?
- Do you eat salad? Why/ Why not?
- We should eat
- I eat salad with each meal.
- My favourite food is
- Too much salt is



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- Osama had lunch
a. at home b. at work c. in the street d. at a restaurant
- His sister ordered
a. koshari b. kofta c. tagine d. fish
- His mother ate
a. meat b. chicken c. fish d. pizza
- His father ate
a. rice and meat b. koshari c. pizza d. beans

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

You are at a restaurant.

Waiter : Hello. What would you like today?

You : Hello. 1

Waiter : Yes. Small or large?

You : 2

Waiter : What would you like to drink?

You : 3

Waiter : Anything else?

You : No, thank you. 4

Waiter : That's 80 pounds please.

You : 5

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hi! My name's Mai. I always have a sandwich and tea for breakfast. My favourite sandwiches are potatoes and cheese sandwiches. They're delicious! I also like kofta sandwiches. I always have lunch at school. I take a packed lunch with me. I have some sandwiches, an apple or a banana and I usually drink hot chocolate or tea. For dinner I have cheese and some salad, pizza or fish and chips. But, I like spaghetti the most because it is my favourite food.

A. Answer the following questions:

- What is Mai's favourite food?
- Where does she have her lunch?
- Do you think Mai is healthy? Why/ Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- She drinks at school.
a. hot chocolate or tea b. juice and water
c. coffee and tea d. juice and milk
- Potatoes and cheese sandwiches are
a. terrible b. bad c. wrong d. delicious
- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
a. spaghetti b. pizza c. food d. cheese

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- There figs in the cupboard. WB
a. is any b. are any c. aren't any d. aren't some
- There's a lot of sugar in this
a. salt b. recipe c. koshari d. meat
- There cheese in the fridge. WB
a. is any b. are any c. are some d. is some
- We shouldn't drink too much fruit
a. soup b. oil c. juice d. tea

5. A is a small meal that you can eat between meals.
 a. snake b. snack c. breakfast d. lunch
6. Ful and falafel are very in Egypt.
 a. unknown b. dark c. light d. popular
7. It's delicious to put a teaspoon of on the food.
 a. water b. rice c. cinnamon d. tea
8. Put the rice pudding in the
 a. fridge b. page c. bridge d. age
9. are natural oils in food.
 a. Fans b. Foot c. Fats d. Feet
10. We apologize when we make a mistake.
 a. should b. have c. are d. shouldn't

SB

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You should eat too much chocolate. (.....)
2. Don't drink too many fruit juice. (.....)
3. I didn't buy some food from the market. (.....)
4. There is a lot of people outside. (.....)

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

WB

(مجاوب عنه قبل الاختبار)

A meal you remember.

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What meal do you remember?
 - Who was with you?

- Where did you have it?
 - What did they choose?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I fish rice.
 - I went with
 - We chose the

- It was at a restaurant.
 - The restaurant was sea.
 - I hope to again.

Review B

SB pages 64 - 65 WB pages 116 - 117

Key Vocabulary

special food

spring

BCE

hide (hid / hidden)

pancakes

pan

طعام من نوع خاص

فصل الربيع

قبل الميلاد

يخفي / يختفي

فطير

طاسة / مقلاة

butter

honey

play

sunglasses

check (ed)

استمع إلى المفردات



زبد

عسل

مسرحة

نظارة شمس

يفحص / يتأكد



Reading

SB Page (64)

Sham El-Nessim

استمع إلى النص



1 What and when is it?

Sham El-Nessim⁽¹⁾ is my favourite time of the year. We enjoy it at the start of spring⁽²⁾. Sham El-Nessim started in 2700 BCE⁽³⁾!

2 What people do

Today, most Egyptians have a picnic in a park or next to the river with their families. Many people also go to the beach, where they make sandcastles and swim in the sea.



3 A recipe

On this day, we eat a lot of special food. Do you want to know how to enjoy feseekh? Add lemon juice to the fish and have it with salad. It's delicious, but you should buy it from a good shop and you shouldn't eat too much!

- ١- شام النسيم
 ٢- فصل الربيع
 ٣- قبل الميلاد

4 What I did

Last year at Sham El-Nessim, we went to Alexandria. We visited our family and went to the beach. We rode our bikes and played games. Do you know what we are doing in this photo? We are painting eggs! We always do this. We didn't see our cousins last year, but we made a video call. It was fun to talk to them on the laptop.



Do you know any other special food? Click on the icon at the top of this website. Take a photo and write an email about it. Send us a message for it.

New Message**Judy's shopping list**

Hi Judy,

The family party is on Saturday. There are ten people. Can you help me and buy the shopping?

Five people like fish. Five people like chicken. The children like fizzy drinks, but they aren't healthy. So, we can have orange juice. Four bottles is enough for the children.

We can all drink water, so we need eight bottles. Buy some tea, too, please.

Please go to the shops and then check we have enough chairs.

Many thanks

Mona

Send

A | @ | 📷 | 🔍 | 😊

Look at these photos of my holiday. This is my family. We are having a picnic on the beach. That is my little sister. She is making a sandcastle. That is my big brother. He is riding a bike. Look at my cousins! They are swimming in the sea. In this photo, my uncle is climbing a mountain. And that is me! I am sleeping in a tent.

Audioscript

Narrator : In the UK, many people eat **pancakes**⁽¹⁾ at the start of spring. How do you make pancakes?

Put all your ingredients in a bowl, and add two eggs.

Stir everything together.

Put some butter in a pan. When the **butter**⁽²⁾ is hot, you should start cooking your pancakes! Cook each pancake for 2 to 3 minutes on one side. Then cook the other side of the pancake. Eat your pancakes with **honey**⁽³⁾ and nuts, or with sugar and lemon juice. Humm, they are delicious!

١- فطير

٢- زبد

٣- العسل

- 1- **Boy 1** : I have tickets for the new play on Saturday.
- Boy 2** : How exciting!
- 2- **Man 1** : I'd like a small salad, please.
- Man 2** : Is that everything?
- Man 1** : Er, have you got any orange juice?
- Man 2** : Small or large?
- Man 1** : Large, please.
- 3- **Woman** : First put water in a kettle. Then boil the water. Put the hot water in a cup with some hot chocolate. Don't add too much sugar. It isn't healthy.
- 4- **Girl** : Last summer, we went to the Red Sea. I swam in the sea every day! It was wonderful!
- 5- **Woman** : It's very hot today. You should drink a lot of water and you should wear a hat, too!

Test on Units 4, 5 & 6**A Listening**

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Azza had a wonderful time in
a. London b. Paris c. Cairo d. Dubai
2. She bought a T-shirt and
a. souvenirs b. jackets c. carpets d. postcards
3. She visited a
a. mountain b. building c. tower d. tree
4. She came back a ago.
a. month b. day c. week d. year

B Language Functions**2** Complete the following dialogue:

Magda is asking Eman about her favourite food.

Magda : What's your favourite food, Eman?

Eman : ①

Magda : What are the main ingredients of koshari?

Eman : ②

Magda : ③?

Eman : I like to eat it at the restaurant.

Magda : ④?

Eman : Yes, it is delicious.

Magda : Is it expensive?

Eman : ⑤

C Reading Comprehension**3** Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Yara. I'm 12 years old. I live in Cairo. I live with my family, my parents, my sister Yomna and my brother Ahmed. I like healthy snacks. But, my sister Yomna likes unhealthy snacks. I eat bananas, grapes and salad. The healthy food is delicious. Yomna eats crisps, pizza and chocolate. My brother Ahmed likes healthy snacks, too. He eats carrots and peppers. They are delicious. Yomna often becomes ill. My mother always takes her to see a doctor. She has bad teeth. We should all eat healthy snacks.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does Yomna like?

2. What does Ahmed like?

3. Do you like healthy snacks? Why / Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "her" refers to

- a. the mother b. Yara c. Yomna d. teeth

5. Ahmed eats and peppers.

- a. crisps b. carrots c. chocolate d. pizza

6. Yomna likes

- a. bananas b. grapes c. milk d. chips

D Vocabulary and Structure**4** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We haven't got milk.
a. some b. a c. any d. an
- I always feel of spiders.
a. frightened b. interesting c. delicious d. active
- is a popular Egyptian meal.
a. Koshari b. Kapenta c. Tagine d. Burger
- There isn't any in rice pudding.
a. rice b. meat c. sugar d. milk
- Ali is an English book.
a. read b. reads c. reading d. riding
- You should keep your secret.
a. passports b. password c. passage d. passenger
- People can go to beaches and build
a. sandcastles b. picnic c. jungles d. boxes
- The from the top of the Cairo Tower is fantastic.
a. review b. camera c. view d. revision
- I love technology. My favourite hobby is playing games.
a. icon b. charger c. selfie d. video
- How you go to school yesterday?
a. do b. did c. doing d. does

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

- There are any peppers in the fridge. (.....)
- I ate too much olives. (.....)
- They didn't climbed the tree. (.....)
- He are catching fish now. (.....)

E Writing**6** Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

A wonderful picnic

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

General Exercises from Student's Book & Workbook

Complete the following dialogue:

Unit 1

1- Dalida is talking about her cousin.

Dalida : This is a photo of my cousin.

Reem : ①

Dalida : It's Fares.

Reem : ②

Dalida : He's 14 years old.

Reem : Where does he live?

Dalida : ③

Reem : Which food does he like?

Dalida : ④

Reem : Which sport does he like?

Dalida : ⑤

2- Hana and Nadia are talking about hobbies.

Hana : Hello! Nadia.

Nadia : Hello! Hana.

Hana : ①

Nadia : ② I play tennis on Tuesdays.

Hana : ③

Nadia : In the club.

Hana : Who do you play with?

Nadia : ④

Hana : Do you have any other hobbies?

Nadia : ⑤

Unit 2

SB & WB Exercises

3- Hala is talking to Omar.

Hala : Good morning, Omar.

Omar : ①

Hala : What subject have we got next, Omar?

Omar : ②

Hala : I like science. ③

Omar : It's English. ④

Hala : ⑤

Omar : Yes, I'm quite good at English and French. ⑥

Hala : I'm not very good at them.

Omar : OK! ⑦

Unit 3

4- Ziad and Ahmed are talking about Mohamed Salah.

Ziad : Hello! Ahmed.

Ahmed : Hello! Ziad. ①

Ziad : Yes, I like football. ②

Ahmed : ③

Ziad : Mohamed Salah. ④

Ahmed : What does he look like? ⑤

Ziad : ⑥

Ahmed : Why do people like him? ⑦

Ziad : ⑧

Ahmed : We should be proud of him. ⑨

Review A

5- Samir is speaking about himself.

Salah : Good morning, Samir.

Samir : Good morning, Salah.

Salah : ①

Samir : I've got three sisters. ②

Salah : ③

Samir : I like swimming. ④

Salah : ⑤ I go swimming every week.

Samir : We can go swimming together next week. ⑥

Salah : ⑦ Where will we go swimming?

Samir : ⑧

Unit 4

6- Judy is talking to Leila on the phone.

Judy : Hi Leila. Where are you?

Leila : Hi Judy. I'm in the park with my family.

Judy : ① ?

Leila : I'm sitting under a tree. It's very sunny. ?

Judy : ② ?

Leila : No, they aren't. ③ ?

Judy : Is your dad playing football with them?

Leila : ④ He's not here. He's working today.

Judy : What is your mum doing?

Leila : ⑤ ?

7- Ali and his mum are talking.

Mum : Ali!

Ali : Yes, Mum.

Mum : Come here, please.

Ali : Yes, Mum. ① ?

Mum : ② ?

Ali : Yes, OK. What do you want me to do?

Mum : ③ ?

Ali : OK, Mum. I'll take the sugar to my grandmother. ④ ?

Mum : No, thanks. ⑤ ?

Ali : OK, Mum. I won't be late.

8- Fady is going shopping.

Fady : Hi! Emad.

Emad : Hi, Fady. ① ?

Fady : I'm going to the Mall of Arabia.

Emad : Why?

Fady : ② ?

Emad : Great! ③ ?

Fady : No, there aren't any mobile phones there.

Emad : Where can I buy a good mobile phone?

Fady : ④ ?

Emad : OK. I'll go to Masr Mall tomorrow. ⑤ ?

Unit 5

9- Fatma got a new laptop.

Fatma : My father bought me a new laptop.

Marwa : ① !

Fatma : Yes, but I broke it while I was playing some games, ?

Marwa : ② ?

Fatma : No, he didn't buy me another one. ?

Marwa : ③ ?

Fatma : He asked an engineer to repair it. ! What did he do?

Marwa : ④ ?

Fatma : Yes, he repaired it. It works well now. ?

Marwa : ⑤ !

10- Ramy and Rahma are talking about Ramy's last holiday.

Ramy : I went to Alexandria last week.

Rahma : ① !

Ramy : When we arrived, it was raining. ?

Rahma : ② ?

Ramy : We didn't want to swim in the sea. ?

Rahma : ③ ?

Ramy : Then the rain stopped and we went on a boat trip. ?

Rahma : ④ !

Ramy : I bought this souvenir for you. ?

Rahma : ⑤ ?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB & WB Exercises Vocabulary

Unit 1

1. What is the name of Ali's and how old is he?

a. grandmother b. grandfather c. sister d. daughter

2. Our grandmother is 64 and she's Huda.

a. cooled b. sailed c. called d. killed

3. A is a place with lots of houses and shops.

a. mountain b. forest c. city d. desert

4. are animals that are like sheep.

a. Dinosaurs b. Goats c. Parrots d. Monkeys

SB & WB Exercises

5. Heidi is a story of a/an girl. She had no mother or father.
a. happy b. careful c. cheerful d. orphan
6. Habiba is a top She wants to go to the Olympics.
a. gymnast b. viewer c. teacher d. worker
7. Athletes work hard to their studies, their sport and their friends and family.
a. break b. answer c. practise d. balance
8. A/An is a room at the top of a house.
a. stair b. attic c. kitchen d. hall
9. Your brother is your parent's
a. son b. sister c. uncle d. daughter
10. Your is your mum or dad's sister.
a. uncle b. grandmother c. grandfather d. aunt
11. Khaled goes swimming in a pool
a. by b. nearly c. nearby d. behind
12. A is very high.
a. river b. valley c. mountain d. cave
13. You can get milk and cheese from a/an
a. elephant b. goat c. giraffe d. monkey
14. A / An is always at the top of the house.
a. bathroom b. kitchen c. office d. attic
15. A football is a game for 22 people.
a. match b. ball c. club d. player
16. Our parents are proud of because we work hard at school.
a. my b. we c. I d. us
17. Grandfather arrives at 5 o'clock. Let's go and meet
a. her b. he c. him d. his
18. My father and mother are my
a. grandchildren b. parents c. cousins d. daughters

Unit 2

19. In a school, students play games in a
a. playground b. theatre c. museum d. library

SB & WB Exercises

20. For homework, we often read books from the
a. street b. house c. playground d. library
21. A is a very big room for a lot of students and teachers.
a. hole b. hall c. hill d. wall
22. On a weekend, I visit my grandmother.
a. famous b. careful c. helpful d. typical
23. The canoe the students to school and home again every day.
a. takes b. gives c. drives d. rides
24. The trains are slow but the buses are
a. early b. busy c. late d. quick
25. All the children in our school go to the when the head teacher wants to talk to us.
a. cave b. hall c. house d. zoo
26. We know it is time for the next lesson when we hear the
a. bell b. plane c. gate d. class
27. Some children in Uganda go to school a canoe.
a. for b. of c. at d. in
28. The children in the USA to school on a snowmobile.
a. take b. travel c. arrive d. fly
29. I arrived Uganda last week.
a. in b. on c. at d. of
30. is the language of England.
a. French b. English c. Arabic d. Spanish
31. At break, I play games with my friends in the
a. classroom b. cinema c. playground d. theatre
32. What's your subject?
a. favourite b. favour c. fat d. heavy
33. A: What have we got next? B: It is computer studies next.
a. language b. timetable c. school d. subject
34. You can find a lot of books in a
a. hospital b. cinema c. playground d. library

Unit 3

35. The woman in the picture has got long hair.
a. street b. straight c. star d. small
36. A baby bird is very It cannot fly for many days.
a. weak b. rich c. strong d. tall
37. How is the Cairo Tower? - It is 187 metres.
a. long b. strong c. tall d. fast
38. Salah gives money to help people schools and hospitals.
a. to building b. to build c. building d. built
39. A plane is very It can go at 900 km/h.
a. tall b. weak c. slow d. fast
40. A: How tall is Mohamed Salah?
B: He is 1.75 tall.
a. metres b. kilograms c. centimetres d. kilometres
41. Camels are very They can carry 200 kilos of bags.
a. weak b. low c. strong d. poor
42. My aunt is very She always gives me presents.
a. kind b. poor c. tall d. fast
43. Mohamed Salah a lot of goals.
a. records b. plays c. scores d. gives
44. A/An person makes good decisions.
a. safe b. sensible c. strange d. exciting
45. We often get when we are unhappy about something.
a. angry b. hungry c. scary d. clever
46. A person is always doing something.
a. frightened b. scary c. busy d. free
47. A/An person knows a lot.
a. angry b. scary c. boring d. clever
48. A person is happy to do something dangerous.
a. sensible b. busy c. brave d. scary
49. After I my homework, I like reading a book.
a. make b. go c. score d. do

50. The strange of that man frightened me.
a. appear b. kindness c. fun d. appearance
51. Osama likes playing football, basketball tennis.
a. but b. and c. so d. because
52. I like swimming in the pool it is nice and cool.
a. but b. before c. because d. ago
53. My sister Lina has got long hair glasses.
a. because b. and c. as d. but
54. My father is very busy, he plays sports every day.
a. but b. from c. so d. so that
55. Something scary makes you feel
a. sad b. bad c. funny d. frightened
56. A giraffe is a animal.
a. rich b. tall c. poor d. long
57. Nader always talks nicely to people. He's very
a. slow b. unfriendly c. unkind d. friendly

Unit 4

58. Ziad has got a new MP3
a. teacher b. listener c. player d. printer
59. Adam is sending messages to his grandfather now.
a. test b. text c. selfie d. icon
60. There are three laptop in the classroom.
a. players b. videos c. computers d. phones
61. Ziad has got a phone.
a. mobile b. mouse c. icon d. chair
62. Fares is his Computer Studies homework.
a. making b. helping c. taking d. doing
63. The whiteboard is the teacher's desk.
a. between b. inside c. with d. behind
64. at the website and find information.
a. Look b. Tap c. Charge d. Use

SB & WB Exercises

65. There is a mouse to the laptop on the teacher's desk.
a. there b. next c. between d. far
66. the icon on your mobile phone.
a. Type b. Call c. Tap d. Tie
67. There are of flowers and insects in the park.
a. much b. lot c. a lots d. lots
68. The boy is a kite in the park.
a. turning b. boiling c. flying d. adding
69. A/An is something you do not want to tell people.
a. nature b. break c. secret d. insect
70. Computers and mobile phones are examples of
a. technology b. passwords c. nature d. video games
71. You should keep your secret when you use technology.
a. nature b. password c. break d. advice
72. It's important to stay online.
a. safe b. worried c. angry d. save
73. I'd like to a selfie in front of the river.
a. make b. do c. eat d. take
74. They used a/an to make a plastic model.
a. icon b. mobile phone c. charger d. 3D printer
75. Can you me a text message when you arrive?
a. spend b. stay c. send d. stop

Unit 5

76. The is very high and there's lots of water in it.
a. beach b. cave c. lake d. waterfall
77. A is what you can see from a place.
a. view b. picture c. message d. flat
78. A is a place to stay for a holiday.
a. library b. restaurant c. castle d. holiday flat
79. The is a friendly sea animal.
a. dolphin b. shark c. lion d. tiger

SB & WB Exercises

80. To is to sleep for a time in a tent.
a. buy b. camp c. visit d. ride
81. A is a big strong building from the past.
a. castle b. hotel c. souvenir d. desert

Unit 6

82. You can learn a lot about food recipes
a. online b. line c. fine d. outline
83. We should look our teeth.
a. for b. to c. from d. after
84. The name tagine comes from the pot for this food.
a. playing b. writing c. cooking d. swimming
85. Put the rice pudding in the
a. fridge b. page c. bridge d. age

SB & WB Exercises Language

Unit 1

1. It's her car. often drives it.
a. Her b. Hers c. She d. Mine
2. Throw the ball to, please. I am waiting.
a. I b. me c. my d. mine
3. Clap for the football players; played very well.
a. they b. their c. them d. theirs
4. I listen to music.
a. aren't b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't
5. I the drums.
a. plays b. playing c. is playing d. play
6. Our parents are proud of because we work hard at school.
a. my b. we c. I d. us

Unit 2

7. It is very hot in the summer.
a. never b. not c. hardly d. usually
8. We go to the beach in winter. It's too cold there.
a. always b. never c. usually d. sometimes
9. The names are Mena and Soha.
a. girl's b. girls c. girl d. girls'
10. That is not the children's notebook. It is the
a. teacher b. teachers c. teacher's d. teachers's
11. This is the room. They always have rest there.
a. teacher b. teachers' c. teacher's d. teachers
12. These are the football shirts. They will wear them tomorrow.
a. boy's b. boy c. boys's d. boys'
13. That is not Mr Abdelaziz's ball. It is the ball.
a. children b. children's c. childrens' d. childs'
- We speak English in our English lessons. It's very useful for us.
a. never b. sometimes c. always d. does not

Unit 3

14. I got glasses.
a. haven't b. has c. hasn't d. don't
15. Mohamed Salah score lots of goals.
a. has b. do c. have d. can
16. Samir got short hair.
a. is b. have c. has d. was
17. Salah likes video games when he is at home.
a. play b. playing c. plays d. to playing
18. I quite like sport. My favourite sport is tennis.
a. to doing b. does c. do d. doing
19. you like playing tennis?
a. Does b. Is c. Do d. Have

20. I don't like painting, but I love
a. swimming b. swim c. to swimming d. swam
21. Mustafa loves Art at school.
a. doing b. do c. does d. to doing
22. your father got a moustache?
a. Have b. Do c. Has d. Does
23. Maya tennis, but she likes basketball.
a. likes b. don't like c. like d. doesn't like
24. Nevine loves tennis.
a. played b. to playing c. playing d. plays
25. My brothers and I don't like TV after school.
a. watching b. watch c. watches d. watched
26. My best friend got short dark hair.
a. has b. to have c. having d. have

Unit 4

27. She's you a photo now.
a. send b. sends c. sent d. sending
28. A: Is there teacher? B: No, there isn't.
a. any b. a c. an d. some
29. Look! My grandma a book.
a. read b. will read c. have read d. is reading
30. They at websites for information.
a. 's looking b. 's looked c. 're looking d. looking
31. the message icon to send a text message.
a. Doesn't tap b. Tapping c. To tap d. Tap
32. friends with people you don't know to keep safe online.
a. Don't make b. Make c. Makes d. To make
33. there an MP3 player on the desk?
a. Are b. Is c. Have d. Were

Unit 5

34. The beach far from Sayed's home.
a. was b. were c. are d. weren't
35. Sayed and Mariam into the cave last week.
a. going b. went c. goes d. go
36. Did you on holiday last year?
a. went b. goes c. go d. going
37. What did you on Saturday evening?
a. did b. do c. does d. doing
38. What did your mother at the market?
a. buy b. bought c. buying d. buys
39. How did you to school today?
a. went b. going c. goes d. go
40. What did you for dinner last night?
a. ate b. eat c. eating d. eats
41. The tourists camped in the desert and in a tent!
a. sleep b. slept c. sleeps d. sleeping
42. you and your family stay in a hotel last summer?
a. Does b. Are c. Did d. Do

Unit 6

43. there any hummus?
a. Is b. Are c. Were d. Am
44. There are raisins in the fridge.
a. much b. a c. any d. some
45. Crisps have too salt and fat.
a. any b. some c. much d. many
46. There are peppers, too.
a. any b. a c. much d. some
47. I don't like these cakes because they have sugar in them.
a. too much b. too many c. enough d. a lot

48. there any cheese?
a. Are b. Were c. Does d. Is
49. There is not rain for orange trees to grow in the desert.
a. too few b. too many c. enough d. a lot of
50. We drink a glass of milk every day.
a. can't b. should c. couldn't d. shouldn't
51. We have drinks with a lot of sugar.
a. should b. have to c. must d. shouldn't
52. Lama feels ill. She see a doctor.
a. can't b. shouldn't c. should d. mustn't
53. We drink too much fruit juice.
a. should b. shouldn't c. can d. not
54. You always clean your teeth before you go to bed.
a. should b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. can't
55. We eat too many crisps.
a. should b. doesn't c. must d. shouldn't
56. We have fizzy drinks.
a. have to b. must c. shouldn't d. should
57. There figs in the cupboard.
a. is any b. are any c. aren't any d. aren't some
58. There cheese in the fridge.
a. is any b. are any c. are some d. is some
59. We haven't got milk.
a. some b. a c. any d. an

Read and correct the underlined words

Unit 1

1. Can me have my pen, please? (.....)
2. My brother found a blue pen. It wasn't his. It was my. (.....)
3. Do he play football on Mondays? (.....)
4. She's my mum. I'm hers son. (.....)

SB & WB Exercises

5. Tell me about yours family.
6. Does you play chess?

Unit 2

7. This is Alis phone. It's new!
8. These are my sisters shoes. Her name is Huda.
9. That is Ahmed and Hossam house.

Unit 3

10. Tarek's uncle has got a beard, but he has got a moustache.
11. We can giving money to help poor people.
12. Have you got dark hair? - Yes, I do.
13. All my brothers and sisters have get dark curly hair.
14. I'm not good at run. I'm very slow.
15. My brother and I don't like watch TV after school.

Unit 4

16. There are an MP3 player behind the laptop.
17. I'm play chess online now.
18. Hello! Adel. What are people in your family do?
19. Are the students in your classroom work?
20. Don't tell your parent or teacher if you are worried about something.

21. To put the hot water in a cup with a tea bag.
22. Taking out the tea bag.

Unit 5

23. A : Do you go to Alexandria?
B : Yes, I did.

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

SB & WB Exercises

Unit 1

My hobbies

A person in my family

My best friend

My usual week

Unit 2

My day

My journey to school

Handwriting practice lines for the topic 'My journey to school'.

What I usually do at the weekend

Handwriting practice lines for the topic 'What I usually do at the weekend'.

Your daily life

Handwriting practice lines for the topic 'Your daily life'.

Unit 3

Your favourite sports star

Handwriting practice lines for the topic 'Your favourite sports star'.

A character in a book or film

Handwriting practice lines for the topic 'A character in a book or film'.

A blog post about yourself

Handwriting practice lines for the topic 'A blog post about yourself'.

A blog post about a friend

Handwriting practice lines for the topic 'A blog post about a friend'.

My favourite book

Handwriting practice lines for the topic 'My favourite book'.

Unit 4

Your classroom

Handwriting practice lines for the topic 'Your classroom'.

Which do you like more, nature or technology?

Handwriting practice lines for the topic 'Which do you like more, nature or technology?'.

Technology in your classroom

How to stay safe online

Unit 5

My last weekend

What did I do last summer?

A day on the beach

"A visit to Paris"

Unit 6

SB & WB Exercises

A healthy meal

A meal I remember

The food you like in your kitchen

Your favourite meal "Koshari"

Food we should or shouldn't eat

End of Term Practice

مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- Shorouk goes to school
a. alone b. with Lubna only
c. with her mother d. with Lubna and Alaa
- Shorouk is in stage.
a. nursery b. preparatory c. secondary d. university
- Shorouk's parents work in
a. the same place b. different places
c. the same school d. a factory
- work in a hospital.
a. Alaa's parents b. Lubna's parents
c. Shorouk's parents d. No parents

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:
(Nessma and Reem go to the school library)

- Reem : Good morning, Nessma, when will we start doing our research?
Nessma : During the break.
Reem : Great. Where ① ?
Nessma : In the school library.
Reem : Are ② ?
Nessma : Of course, I'm ready.
Reem : Is it easy to find the books we need?
Nessma : ③
Reem : Who will help us there?
Nessma : ④
Reem : I hope ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

Final Exams

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Mona. I want to be a doctor here in Cairo so I always work hard at school. My favourite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak good English to other children in different places. My teacher is very good, but I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was fantastic! I cycled to summer school every day, and I met students from different countries. I now have a friend from Uganda! My favourite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in it!

- What are Mona's favourite subjects?
.....
- Why does she want to speak English?
.....
- Is Mona right to use technology? Why?
.....
- The underlined word it refers to
a. Cairo b. technology c. a river d. summer school
- Where is Mona now?
a. In Egypt b. In England c. In Uganda d. In Cambridge
- What does Mona use to practise her English?
a. Her tablet b. Her phone c. Her laptop d. a and b
- Mona is talking about her
a. pets and hobbies b. life and friends
c. boss at work d. travels to Ughanda

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- There are too people on this beach. Let's go to a different one.
a. many b. much c. enough d. few
- My uncle is very He chooses things wisely.
a. strong b. tall c. fast d. sensible
- I love sports. is my favourite school subject.
a. PE b. Maths
c. Computer studies d. Art

4. The Egyptian football team arrived Uganda two days ago.
a. in b. at c. for d. from
5. On a weekend, Omar reads books at the club library.
a. tropical b. physical c. spicy d. typical
6. Ahmed likes history because he loves about the past.
a. learns b. to learning c. learning d. learnt
7. My father and mother are my
a. grandchildren b. parents c. cousins d. daughters
8. The tourists are a selfie next to the River Nile.
a. touching b. drawing c. relaxing d. taking
9. Tom is writing about his weekend in his online
a. 3D printer b. diary c. mouse d. laptop
10. Why don't we swimming next week?
a. go b. do c. make d. see

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What do you have for breakfast yesterday? (.....)
2. There are too much salt in this recipe. (.....)
3. Amr shouldn't drink too many fruit juice. (.....)
4. Gymnastics are my favourite sport. (.....)

Writing

6 Write an email of 80 words about a typical day in your life.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Exams


Exam 1

Cairo -El Marg



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Do you love nature? نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب 
a. Yes, I did b. No, I don't c. Yes, I do d. No, I didn't
2. What do you like doing?
a. Fishing b. Watching the trees
c. Watching TV d. Playing football
3. Where do you always go?
a. To the park b. To school c. To the club d. To the cinema
4. In which place do you like sitting?
a. In the house b. In the library c. In the bank d. In the garden

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ola asks Noura about her best friend.

- Ola : What is your best friend's name?
Noura : ①?
- Ola : ②?
- Noura : She has got dark hair and green eyes.
- Ola : What does she like doing?
Noura : ③?
- Ola : Is she friendly and kind?
Noura : ④?
- Ola : ⑤?
- Noura : We usually meet in the club on Fridays.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mrs Amal is a teacher of English in a preparatory school. She is very kind and helpful, so all students like her. She comes to school at 7 o'clock in the morning to give the students more lessons and help them with their homework. She has got a small family. Her husband Mr Hazem is a doctor, her two daughters Sama and Nada and her only son Omar.

Omar is going to be a dentist. But her elder daughter Sama who likes English and science wants to be a doctor like her father. Nada, the youngest daughter, wants to be an engineer. They are a happy family.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

2. How many children has Mrs Amal got?

3. Would you like to be a teacher like Mrs Amal? Why/ Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "helpful" means
a. lazy b. useful c. funny d. useless
5. The pronoun "They" refers to
a. the husband b. the wife c. the children d. all the family
6. Mrs Amal comes to school at 7
a. P.M. b. C.M. c. A.M. d. D.M.

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Farida has got hair, it is not straight.
a. blond b. black c. curly d. short
2. Your sister is your parents'
a. son b. cousin c. daughter d. mother

3. "....." means something that only you or a few people know.
a. Secret b. Information c. Selfie d. Meal
4. A is a big, strong building from the past.
a. view b. camp c. souvenir d. castle
5. at the website and find some information about computers.
a. Tap b. Look c. Watch d. Click
6. The street was full of many dogs, so I was
a. scary b. brave c. clever d. frightened
7. Is Hana a video call at the moment?
a. doing b. making c. playing d. singing
8. a typical weekend, I visit my grandmother.
a. At b. In c. Of d. On
9. Manal sometimes to the park in the winter.
a. go b. going c. goes d. went
10. When I was on holiday, I always my cousins.
a. visited b. visits c. visit d. visiting

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What do your sister like? -She is clever and brave. (.....)
2. I think those are the childrens toys. (.....)
3. Would you like have some rice? (.....)
4. Are you at school yesterday? -Yes, I was. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite book"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 2

Giza - El Saff



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What food does Ahmed like?
a. Kapenta b. Tagine c. Fish d. Koshari
- Where does Ahmed sometimes eat it?
a. At school b. In a restaurant c. In a hotel d. In a cave
- When does Ahmed eat it? - On
a. Sunday b. Monday c. Thursday d. Friday
- Who makes it for the family? - His
a. mother b. aunt c. sister d. cousin

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is asking Aya about her best friend.

Ahmed : How are you, Salma?

Salma : ①

Ahmed : What's your best friend's name?

Salma : ②

Ahmed : ③

Salma : She is 14 years old.

Ahmed : ④

Salma : She lives in Giza.

Ahmed : Do you study English together?

Salma : ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer, Tom travelled to Egypt because he wanted to learn Arabic. He went to a language school in Cairo. The people in Cairo were friendly. At first, he wasn't good at Arabic but teachers helped him and the lessons were fun. Cairo's shops are fantastic. Tom bought lots of souvenirs. He visited lots of places. His favourite place was Cairo Tower. He enjoyed the view of the city from the top. He took a selfie and a lot of nice photos. Tom was very happy. He liked Egypt and wanted to visit it again.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Tom go to Egypt?

2. What did he buy?

3. What does the underlined word "him" refer to?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The people in Cairo were
a. friendly b. busy c. lazy d. bad
- His favourite place was Cairo
a. Cinema b. Post c. Tower d. Bank
- Tom went to a school in Cairo.
a. prep b. language c. primary d. secondary

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Twin brothers or sisters have the same age and
a. sons b. daughters c. children d. parents
- Children in Uganda go to school in a
a. canoe b. bus c. train d. snowmobile
- At break, I play games with my friends in the
a. office b. library c. class d. playground
- My father is He always thinks well.
a. bored b. nervous c. strange d. sensible

5. People buy to remember a holiday.
 a. jungles b. souvenirs c. forests
6. Voluntary work is work you for no money.
 a. play b. do c. go
7. Mohamed Salah is my favourite star.
 a. sport b. sport's c. sports
8. Sandy and Nada with their grandmother.
 a. live b. lives c. are live
9. Ola got glasses, but I have got glasses.
 a. has b. hasn't c. have
10. Marwan is 12 years old. Today is birthday.
 a. his b. her c. he

- d. waterfalls
- d. listen to
- d. a sport
- d. living
- d. haven't
- d. him

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Which lesson did you had before English? (.....)
2. There is any money in the wallet. (.....)
3. Are they study at the moment? (.....)
4. Nourhan goes to a girls school in Tanta. (.....)

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your school day"

Exam 3 Qalyubia - El Khanka

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mr school is from my house.
 a. near b. far c. easy d. long
2. I to school every morning.
 a. recycle b. drive c. cycle d. take
3. I at my school on time.
 a. arrive b. catch c. walk d. talk
4. It's to go to school by bike.
 a. bad b. unhealthy c. scary d. healthy

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is asking Alaa about his favourite sport.

Ahmed : What's your favourite sport?

Alaa : ①

Ahmed : Basketball! ②

Alaa : Because I am tall and fast.

Ahmed : ③

Alaa : I play it in the club.

Ahmed : How often do you play it?

Alaa : ④

Ahmed : Can I play with you?

Ashraf : ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hana loves nature. She likes walking and watching trees, animals, birds and flowers all around her. She doesn't like staying at home, but she loves being in the garden. Her favourite place is the park near her house. She can see lots of different kinds of birds there. She has got a mobile phone. She takes lots of photos of flowers and birds, but she doesn't send text messages or make video calls. She doesn't like playing video games. Hana loves writing articles about nature.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

2. What does Hana use her mobile for?

3. How do you know that Hana loves nature?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Hana doesn't make calls.

- a. audio b. video c. earphone d. message

5. The underlined word "there" refers to the

- a. birds b. home c. school d. park

6. The underlined verb "doesn't like" means

- a. enjoys b. hates c. loves d. prefers

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Doing work for no money is a /an work.

- a. bad b. daily c. adventure d. voluntary

2. My uncle is very He chooses things wisely.

- a. angry b. busy c. sensible d. dark

3. Playing chess is one of my favourite

- a. subjects b. colours c. hobbies d. ideas

4. They have the same age and the same parents, they are

- a. twins b. relatives c. friends d. orphans

5. Soha a selfie at the moment.
a. taking b. takes c. is taking d. take
6. I don't like this tea. There is too sugar in it.
a. a lot b. many c. much d. some
7. Last summer, my family a nice holiday in Morocco.
a. have b. has c. having d. had
8. "....." is the opposite of "fast".
a. Low b. Slow c. Quick d. Lucky
9. We learn about acting in
a. drama b. science c. maths d. Arabic
10. You should your password secret.
a. tell b. keep c. say d. deal

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Dalia look at websites on the internet now. (.....)
2. Are there some mobile phones? (.....)
3. What do you do yesterday? (.....)
4. She loves his parents very much. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A day on the beach"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 4 Sharkia - West Zagazig**A Listening**

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What is Alice's Adventures in Wonderland?
a. a children's story b. a magazine c. a men's book d. a newspaper
- Who helps Alice?
a. a cow b. a rabbit c. a cat d. a queen
- What is Alice like?
a. poor and thin b. brave and clever
c. weak and ugly d. slow and sad
- What kind of people does she meet there?
a. boring b. poor c. rich d. interesting

B Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

Omar is asking Kareem about his father.

Omar : Can I ask you some questions, Kareem?

Kareem : ①

Omar : ②

Kareem : My father is a teacher.

Omar : ③

Kareem : He works at a preparatory school.

Omar : What does he teach?

Kareem : ④

Omar : Do you want to be a math teacher like your father?

Kareem : ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Every day, Hossam gets up at 7 o'clock. Then he washes. He has breakfast. Then he gets dressed and goes to school. At 1:00 p.m. he goes back home, has lunch and does his homework. At 5 o'clock, he plays tennis with his friend and after that, he eats dinner with his family at home. Hossam watches television in the evening. He drinks a glass of milk before he goes to bed at 9:30.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. When does Hossam watch TV?

2. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to?

3. Do you think Hossam is a good boy? Why / Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Hossam gets up early.

- a. never b. always c. sometimes d. doesn't

5. Hossam sleeps after

- a. eating dinner b. drinking milk c. studying d. playing tennis

6. Hossam has dinner with his

- a. friends b. brothers c. family d. teachers

D Vocabulary and Structure

④ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Your mum and dad's sister is you

- a. son b. uncle c. aunt d. daughter

2. At break, I play games with my friends in the

- a. playground b. bell c. library d. classroom

3. Something scary makes you feel

- a. sad b. bad c. funny d. frightened

4. There's an MP3 player to the laptop.
a. in front b. next c. far d. under
5. I swam in the sea and a dolphin.
a. saw b. played c. built d. had
6. are brothers or sisters of the same age.
a. Teams b. Bands c. Twins d. Drums
7. I'd like to a selfie next to the river.
a. take b. make c. do d. tap
8. Tell about your family.
a. my b. I c. me d. mine
9. Has your brother a moustache?
a. got b. gets c. get d. getting
10. I rode on a camel. That fun.
a. is b. was c. were d. are

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Hoda is a gymnast. His family lives in Cairo. (.....)
2. Adel loves play football. (.....)
3. Does you listen to music? (.....)
4. Who shoes are these? - They're Heba's. (.....)

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where did Soha spend her holiday?
a. In Paris b. In Rome c. In Italy d. In Madrid
2. How was the food?
a. salty b. bad c. cold d. delicious
3. What is Paris famous for?
a. The Eiffel Tower b. The Pyramids c. The High Dam d. The Sphinx
4. What did Soha buy for Nada?
a. a bag b. a postcard c. a souvenir d. an MP3 player

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Amr is asking Ali about a photo.

Amr : Who is this woman in the photo?

Ali : 1 ?

Amr : 2 ?

Ali : My aunt's name is Eman.

Amr : 3 ?

Ali : She is 33.

Amr : Where does she live?

Ali : 4 ?

Amr : What is her favourite hobby?

Ali : 5 ?

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

We like the summer holidays because we don't have to get up early. My mother gets up early to look after the house. My father also gets up early in the morning. He washes, prays and eats breakfast with my mother. Then, he reads the newspaper.

We like to spend the summer holiday in Gamasa with our parents. We swim in the sea and play on the sand. Our parents sit on the beach. We usually go to the cinema or watch TV in the evening. We return home after two weeks.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text?

2. What does the father do after breakfast?

3. What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Mother has breakfast

- a. with me b. with father c. by herself d. with her friends

5. Father has breakfast reading the newspaper.

- a. before b. after c. at d. in

6. They spend days in Gamasa.

- a. twenty four b. fourteen c. ten d. fifty

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Habiba Marzouk is a

- a. gymnast b. sport c. train d. tennis

2. A brave person is happy to do something

- a. fun b. strange c. bad d. dangerous

3. is a game for two people.

- a. Chess b. Football c. Basketball d. Handball

4. Do you swimming after school?

- a. do b. go c. play d. take

5. A / An has no mother or father.

- a. orphan b. nephew c. poor d. parent

6. Mona to school on Friday.

- a. goes never b. always goes c. never go d. never goes

7. My dad us to school.

- a. drives b. draws c. goes d. cleans

8. the icon on your mobile phone.

- a. Click b. Look c. Tap d. Do

9. Eyad football now.

- a. plays b. playing c. played d. is playing

10. He doesn't English on Sunday.

- a. has b. have c. having d. had

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. This is Shaimaa's and Mona car.

(.....)

2. They should to drink healthy water.

(.....)

3. I like English but maths.

(.....)

4. First, putting some water in a kettle.

(.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How to stay safe online"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 6 Behira - Koum Hamada



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Habiba Marzouk is a
a. teacher b. doctor c. gymnast d. coach
- How old is Habiba Marzouk?
a. eight b. eighteen c. eighty d. eighty eight
- She lives in
a. Cairo b. Tanta c. Alexandria d. Benha
- Gymnastics makes her
a. sad b. thirsty c. hungry d. happy

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sherif is asking Rania some questions.

Sherif : Hello.

Rania : 1?

Sherif : 2?

Rania : Yes, I'm a student.

Sherif : 3?

Rania : I live in Cairo.

Sherif : What's your father's job?

Rania : 4?

Sherif : Do you want to be a doctor, too?

Rania : 5?

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Cairo is a big city. It is the capital of Egypt. About twenty million people live there. There are a lot of gardens where families can go and spend a nice time. There are also a lot of restaurants where you can have delicious meals and different dishes. It is always visited by tourists from all over the world. They enjoy visiting ancient places. They visit the Egyptian Museum to see the ancient treasures and statues. They also visit the Cairo Tower where they can have a look on the whole city.

A. Answer the following questions:

- What's the capital of Egypt?
- Where can tourists have a look on the city of Cairo?
- Why do you think Cairo is a crowded city?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- About million people live in Cairo.
a. 2 b. 20 c. 200 d. 2000
- We can have lunch at a/an
a. Cairo Tower b. Egyptian Museum
c. capital d. restaurant
- The word "ancient" means
a. old b. new c. modern d. high

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A is very high, but some people can climb it.
a. playground b. bell c. goat d. mountain
- On a weekend, I visit my grandfather.
a. typical b. famous c. polite d. kind
- I get up half six every day.
a. to b. too c. two d. past

4. A brave person is happy to do something
 a. frightened b. afraid c. dangerous d. bored
5. To stay safe, don't friends with people you don't know.
 a. do b. make c. give d. take
6. I bought a lot of from London's shops.
 a. activities b. souvenirs c. deserts d. castles
7. There are too many in this rice pudding.
 a. raisins b. tomatoes c. vegetables d. olives
8. This bag is Heba's. Give it to
 a. her b. hers c. my d. she
9. The rich can money to help poor people.
 a. give b. gives c. gave d. given
10. There any tablets in our class.
 a. are b. aren't c. is d. isn't

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Good students always come late to school. (.....)
2. Has your friend get straight hair. (.....)
3. My grandfather watch TV at the moment. (.....)
4. I didn't went to school last week. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hala is years old.
 a. 3 b. 30 c. 13 d. 23
2. Hala goes to school by
 a. bike b. plane c. car d. bus
3. Hala is a student.
 a. fast b. clever c. lazy d. bad
4. Hala has computer studies a week.
 a. once b. three times c. four times d. twice

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar and Ahmed are talking about their favourite hobbies.

Omar : Hi Ahmed!

Ahmed : Hi Omar. ①

Omar : I like sports. I play football on Fridays.

Ahmed : ②

Omar : In the club.

Ahmed : Who do you play it with?

Omar : ③

Ahmed : Do you have any other hobbies?

Omar : ④ And you.

Ahmed : ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are bad. You can eat crisps and cakes, but you should not eat many of them. Crisps have much fat and salt. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have much sugar which is bad for us.

Fruit is a great snack! It is very useful for us and it has a sweet taste. You should eat between two and four pieces a day. Beans and vegetables are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. They are delicious. We should be careful even with healthy foods. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

2. What do you think about snacks?

3. How much fruit should you have every day?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "delicious" is the opposite of

- a. terrible b. good c. sweet d. healthy

5. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to

- a. cakes b. crisps and cakes
c. snacks d. beans and vegetables

6. Fish sometimes have

- a. a lot of sugar b. a lot of salt c. a lot of fat d. a lot of food

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali is very sad to be from his grandfather.

- a. way b. away c. why d. weight

2. Our science teacher made some to make the lesson easier.

- a. diagrams b. grams c. noise d. food

3. On a weekend, I visit my grandmother.
a. physical b. musical c. typical d. national
4. Don't tell people your telephone number or your information.
a. personal b. sunny c. worried d. colourful
5. On the London Eye, there was a beautiful from the top.
a. project b. activity c. souvenir d. view
6. To is to move around ingredients, sugar with a spoon.
a. add b. cook c. stir d. bring
7. We stayed on the and enjoyed the sea.
a. desert b. beach c. moon d. valley
8. Ali loves basketball. He it every day.
a. play b. playing c. plays d. played
9. Mum and my sister a cake.
a. making b. is making c. makes d. are making
10. When I went to school, I good at maths.
a. wasn't b. didn't c. don't d. can't

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Today is hers birthday. (.....)
2. We both get up in half past six. (.....)
3. Does your father like read? (.....)
4. Listen! She is play the piano. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your best friend"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Exams

امتحانات على منهج الفصل الدراسي الأول من الإدارات

المختلفة بالمحافظات 2022

Exam

1

القاهرة - ادارة الشروق



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. Asem lives with his

- a** uncle **b** father **c** parents **d** grandfather

2. Asem's grandfather is a/an

- a** farmer **b** doctor **c** child **d** engineer

3. Asem his grandfather.

- a** takes **b** teaches **c** helps **d** learns

4. Asem's grandfather

- a** teaches English **b** grows plants **c** builds roads **d** helps sick people

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sama is asking Hana about her family.

Sama : Hello, Hana.

Hana : Hello, Sama.

Sama : What is your grandmother called?

Hana : She is ① Fatma.

Sama : How old ② ?

Hana : She is 55.

Sama : Does she cook well?

Hana : Yes, ③

Sama : Where ④ ?

Hana : She lives ⑤ Cairo.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Mustafa. I am 23 years old. I am an engineer. My hobbies are listening to music and watching television. When I am free, I often listen to my favourite songs. At weekends, I usually go to music shops to buy good CDs. I always feel tired after a day's work. So, I usually listen to music in order to forget all worries of work. Also, listening to music will help me become relaxed and more comfortable before starting my work. I also spend an hour after dinner watching news and programs. I enjoy the program "The World Here and There" because it makes me know more about nature.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What are Mustafa's favourite hobbies?

2. Where does Mustafa buy good CDs?

3. What do you think of music?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Listening to music makes Mustafa -----.

- a** worried **b** sad **c** angry **d** relaxed

5. Mustafa spends ----- minutes after dinner watching news and programs.

- a** 15 **b** 30 **c** 60 **d** 45

6. Mustafa works as a/an -----.

- a** doctor **b** engineer **c** farmer **d** teacher

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Her dream is to go to the ----- . She is a gymnast.

- a** Physics **b** Olympics **c** Mathematics **d** Gymnastics

2. Samar wants to join the school music ----- .

- a** band **b** pond **c** hole **d** dream

3. I want a full _____ of the flat before buying it.
 a study b description c answer d training
4. Last week, I had a lot of _____ in Dream Park.
 a adventures b stories c animals d mountains
5. Egypt is the most important _____ in Africa.
 a village b countryside c city d country
6. The classroom is _____. There are 80 students.
 a free b great c busy d balanced
7. Athletes work hard to _____ their studies, work and their families.
 a practise b balance c research d volunteer
8. What do you think _____ Mazen?
 a of b to c by d off
9. There weren't _____ cars in the desert.
 a some b no c any d a lot
10. A: Where did Younis _____ on holiday? B: To Jordan.
 a went b going c goes d go

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Does she like watch TV? (.....)
2. A: Is there a mouse? B: Yes, there are. (.....)
3. Last summer, my family have a fantastic holiday. (.....)
4. We play games with the children and read they stories. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your visit to the Pyramids"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When do Hatem and Mazen help in the hospital? On
 a Saturdays b Sundays c Mondays d Tuesdays
2. Who likes playing football?
 a Hatem b Mazen c Both of them d Their sister
3. What do Hatem and Mazen play together?
 a Drums b Music c Football d Chess
4. Who are Hatem and Mazen?
 a Sisters b Twins c Friends d Fathers

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hany and his teacher are talking about hobbies.

Teacher : What are you doing?

Hany : I'm ① a story.

Teacher : What kind of stories do you like?

Hany : I like ②

Teacher : Do you need any help?

Hany : Yes, please. ③ can I borrow some more stories?

Teacher : At the library, on the second floor.

Hany : Thanks a lot.

Teacher : ④ you got other hobbies?

Hany : ⑤ , I like swimming ,too.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Health is one of the most important things in our life. Everyone wants to keep healthy but some people think it is too hard because they are too busy. There are some easy things you should do to keep healthy. You should drink water instead of fizzy drinks. Fizzy drinks taste good but they have much sugar. Eating too much sugar will make you gain weight. If you are eating a snack or a meal, you should drink a lot of water. You should avoid eating too much food. Too much food means much weight but less health. You should also exercise because exercising will help you not get sick or feel tired. If you don't have time to do sports, you can walk up the stairs and move around.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Should we drink fizzy drinks or water?

2. Why is it hard for some people to keep healthy?

3. What should you do if you don't have time to do sports?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "they" refers to -----

- a sports b stairs c fizzy drinks d meals

5. Too much sugar will make you -----

- a fat b thin c healthy d important

6. Doing exercise will help you to be -----

- a weak b strong c sick d tired

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Students can play games in the -----

- a library b bell c playground d corridor

2. ----- is a difficult sport, but it makes your body strong.

- a Gymnastics b Physics c Mathematics d Gymnast

3. They never their pencil cases or notebooks.
☐ a say ☐ b help ☐ c forget ☐ d listen
4. A is a big, strong building from the past.
☐ a souvenir ☐ b view ☐ c camp ☐ d castle
5. My grandpa gives money to build schools because he is
☐ a kind ☐ b unkind ☐ c scary ☐ d unfriendly
6. A lot of people are fond of selfies.
☐ a clicking ☐ b tapping ☐ c taking ☐ d buying
7. The is very high, there's lots of water in it.
☐ a mountain ☐ b jungle ☐ c desert ☐ d waterfall
8. You shouldn't eat crisps.
☐ a too many ☐ b too much ☐ c little ☐ d some
9. Last summer, my family a fantastic holiday in Paris.
☐ a have ☐ b had ☐ c has ☐ d is having
10. First, some water in the kettle.
☐ a putting ☐ b is putting ☐ c puts ☐ d put

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. My sister has got long hair or glasses. (.....)
2. Those are the children toys. (.....)
3. She gets up at half to six in the morning. (.....)
4. Mr Ali never fly, he travels by train. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A wonderful holiday"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam

3

القليوبية - ادارة طوخ



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where did they go? To

a Siwa

b Cairo

c Tanta

d Luxor

2. They in the lake.

a sailed

b fished

c swam

d ate

3. They saw and slept in a tent.

a cats

b dogs

c cows

d camels

4. It was a holiday.

a favourite

b bad

c happy

d sad

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hany is asking Usama about his family.

Hany : Where do you live, Usama?

Usama : I ① in Cairo.

Hany : ② you got a brother or a sister?

Usama : I have got one brother.

Hany : What is his name?

Usama : ③ name is Ali.

Hany : ④ is your hobby?

Usama : I like ⑤

Hany : Goodbye, Usama.

Usama : Goodbye.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I love technology. It's very useful for me. Technology helps us to do our work. We use it every day. We can send messages, do researches and play games, but to stay safe online, you have to follow some important instructions. First, keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information (e.g. telephone number). Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a parent or a teacher.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What should you do when you are worried about something?

2. What is the main idea of the passage?

3. Why do you think you have to follow these rules when you are online?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. You should keep your _____ secret.

a text

b email

c postcard

d password

5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to _____.

a telephone

b instruction

c technology

d call

6. The underlined word "parent" means _____.

a mum or dad

b uncle

c teacher

d mum's sister

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our parents are proud _____ us.

a at

b of

c on

d to

2. Egypt is a big _____ in Africa.

a city

b cave

c village

d country

3. Salma is a video call now.
 a making b doing c delivering d eating
4. I don't to music.
 a listens b listen c listening d listened
5. He shopping every week.
 a goes b go c going d gone
6. is the subject of how to learn numbers.
 a Drama b Arabic c Maths d English
7. On a weekend, I visited my grandmother.
 a physical b typical c musical d national
8. A: What does school start ? B: At 8 a.m.
 a school b class c lesson d time
9. Breakfast , lunch and are meals.
 a dinner b language c petrol d reading
10. A: tablet is it ? B: It's mine.
 a What b Whose c When d Why

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Can you give me you pen, please? (.....)
2. I play always the drums. (.....)
3. They has got pencils. (.....)
4. She likes eat fish. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A day in your life"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I go to school
 a by bike b by car c on foot d by bus
2. We have in the playground.
 a lessons b break c school d friends
3. The lessons are in the
 a break b playground c classroom d house
4. I to my friends at break.
 a study b take c talk d draw

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Wael is playing chess online.

Basel : What are you doing, Wael?

Wael : I'm playing chess online.

Basel : Who are you ① with?

Wael : I'm playing with John.

Basel : John? ② is he?

Wael : He is my English friend.

Basel : Do you always play chess with ③ ?

Wael : Not often. I have many friends online.

Basel : ④ you also chat with your online friends?

Wael : Yes, we always chat ⑤ Facebook.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name's Lamia. I'm nine years old. I live in Aswan with my family. My parents are teachers. My brother Ali plays football at school and he watches football matches on

TV. Khaled goes swimming every Friday. There's a swimming pool near our house. My best friend is Aya. We play basketball at school and we're **both** in the school team. Our team is very good!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How old is Lamia?

2. Give a suitable title for the passage.

3. How many people are there in Lamia's family?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The swimming pool isn't -----

a near their house

b far from their house

c by their house

d beside their house

5. The underlined word "both" refers to -----

a Lamia's parents

b Aya and Khaled

c Khaled and Ali

d Lamia and Aya

6. I think Lamia's family is -----

a sad

b happy

c boring

d bad

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Salma ----- a story yesterday.

a wrote

b writes

c writing

d write

2. You ----- make noise in the school library.

a should

b should have

c shouldn't

d shouldn't have

3. There are ----- classrooms in our school.

a much

b too many

c too much

d a lot

4. A/An ----- is a room at the top of a house.

a pick

b attic

c kitchen

d library

5. A baby bird is very ----- . It can't fly.

a poor

b weak

c strong

d fit

6. You can find a lot of books at the
 a hospital b library c playground d hall
7. is not a cooking verb.
 a Pudding b Boil c Stir d Add
8. Meat is the main of tagine in Morocco.
 a ingredient b subject c sport d place
9. Mohamed Salah a lot of goals.
 a records b plays c scores d gives
10. Computers and mobile phones are examples of
 a sports b video games c technology d nature

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. That car belongs to Mr Ali. It's him. (.....)
2. She don't go swimming on Fridays. (.....)
3. When I was eight, we go to Siwa. (.....)
4. Amira does never her homework after dinner. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite sport"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam

5

الغربية - ادارة زفتى



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Amira is years old.

a 13

b 14

c 12

d 15

2. She is from

a Cairo

b Hurghada

c Luxor

d Giza

3. Amira is in one at school.

a kindergarten

b primary

c secondary

d preparatory

4. She likes best.

a English

b maths

c science

d maths and science

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Rana and Hana are talking about going to school.

Hana : Hi, Rana.

Rana : Hi, Hana. How do you go to school, Hana?

Hana : My dad ① me to school every day, and you?

Rana : I usually go to school by ②

Hana : ③ do you usually go by bus?

Rana : Because my school is ④ away.

Hana : How long does it ⑤ to go to school?

Rana : It takes about 30 minutes.

Hana : Which is better to go to school in a car or on the bus?

Rana : Of course in a car.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Alice in Wonderland is a famous children's story. Alice had a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She met a lot of interesting characters. Wonderland was strange but an interesting place for Alice. Alice was a sensible, brave and clever girl. **She** met the White Rabbit that was always late and ran fast. The Cheshire Cat was a funny animal

which helped Alice to find different places and characters. The Queen of Hearts was a scary person and she shouted at people but Alice wasn't frightened of her. At the end of the story, all the characters helped Alice to go home again.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does this passage talk about?

2. How did the Cheshire Cat help Alice?

3. Do you think Alice was brave? Why / Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The worst character is -----.

a Alice

b the Cheshire Cat

c The Queen of Hearts

d the King

5. Alice met a lot of interesting ----- in Wonderland.

a characters

b kings

c places

d blog posts

6. The underlined pronoun "**She**" refers to -----

a the Queen

b Alice

c the Cat

d the Rabbit

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ----- Mona and Heba are my cousins.

a Both

b Each

c All

d Two

2. ----- is a difficult sport.

a Mathematics

b Athletics

c Geography

d Home Economics

3. This is ----- phone. It's new.

a Ali

b Alis

c Ali's

d Alis'

4. ----- means when you feel unhappy.

a Lonely

b Alone

c Together

d Solo

5. What we wear on our heads are called
a fans **b** vans **c** pans **d** hats
6. Tell your parents or a teacher if you are frightened something on the internet.
a in **b** of **c** about **d** to
7. Yunis doesn't like watching TV because he thinks it's
a interesting **b** exciting **c** beautiful **d** boring
8. A is a photo you take of yourself.
a door **b** printer **c** selfie **d** castle
9. Salwa a story yesterday.
a read **b** rode **c** reads **d** is reading
10. There any tablets.
a is **b** are **c** isn't **d** aren't

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She is still do her homework. (.....)
2. Went to the ticket office, please. (.....)
3. My sister has a baby girl yesterday. (.....)
4. Where are you come from? (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your family"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How old is Mona?

a Fifteen

b Sixteen

c Seventeen

d Eighteen

2. What does she play?

a Basketball

b Tennis

c Volleyball

d Football

3. How long does she train every day?

a Two hours

b Four hours

c Three hours

d Five hours

4. Where does she live?

a In a village

b In a town

c In a club

d In a city

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nada is talking to Judy about her friend.

Nada : I have a friend from England.

Judy : Really! What's her ①

Nada : She is called Katy. She is very beautiful.

Judy : How do you see her?

Nada : We make ② calls.

Judy : What does she look ③

Nada : She is tall with ④

Judy : Do you have the ⑤ hobbies?

Nada : Yes, we both like reading and swimming.

Judy : That's great.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

A school is a place where students learn from teachers and from each other. We can find schools everywhere in the world. A school can be a large building or a small room. It can also be in the open air like in some places in India. Most students there

live in villages so they study in the fields and under trees. In some countries in Europe like Holland, there are schools on boats. Students study a lot of subjects at school like science, maths and computer studies. Students also use different forms of transport to get to their schools. They may walk, cycle or go by car or bus.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where can we find schools on boats?

2. What does the underlined word "It" refer to?

3. Do you like to go to a school in the open air? Why? Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. When you cycle to school, you go by -----.

- a** car **b** train **c** taxi **d** bike

5. At school, students learn from their teachers and from their -----.

- a** classmates **b** sisters **c** brothers **d** parents

6. Science is a school -----.

- a** building **b** place **c** subject **d** transport

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should ----- on this icon to send the email.

- a** tip **b** top **c** tape **d** tap

2. She couldn't sleep because she watched a ----- film.

- a** scary **b** delicious **c** funny **d** sensible

3. We went on a holiday in the desert and slept in -----.

- a** rooms **b** tents **c** rocks **d** lakes

4. When the ground is covered with ice, we can go around on a -----.

- a** canoe **b** bus **c** bike **d** snowmobile

5. My hair isn't curly. It is -----.

- a** blonde **b** dark **c** straight **d** long

6. We stayed in a hotel that has a beautiful _____ of the city.
☐ a souvenir ☐ b queen ☐ c view ☐ d course
7. You can't work all the time. You need to _____ your life.
☐ a balance ☐ b achieve ☐ c make ☐ d do
8. When Hana was young, she _____ a camel.
☐ a ride ☐ b rides ☐ c riding ☐ d rode
9. Maha! _____ make noise. Your baby brother is sleeping.
☐ a Didn't ☐ b Doesn't ☐ c Don't ☐ d Can't
10. I won't eat this cake. There are _____ raisins in it.
☐ a many ☐ b much ☐ c one ☐ d a lot

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I can't find my book. I'll take my friend book. (_____)
2. There are enough people in the hall. It is very crowded. (_____)
3. Mona and I visited their grandparents. (_____)
4. He doesn't like football. He always plays it. (_____)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your last holiday"

Exam

7

المنوفية - ادارة شبين الكوم



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How old is Yara?

a 8

b 12

c 10

d 9

2. Where does she live?

a Giza

b Tanta

c Cairo

d Aswan

3. She lives with her

a uncles

b cousins

c family

d aunts

4. Yara's father is a

a nurse

b doctor

c farmer

d teacher

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Said and Omar are talking about their favourite hobbies.

Said : Hi Omar. ① your favourite hobby?

Omar : I like sports. I play football ② Friday.

Said : ③ do you play it?

Omar : In the club.

Said : Who do you play it with?

Omar : I play it with ④

Said : Do you have any other hobbies?

Omar : Yes, ⑤ reading.

Said : I like reading, too.

Omar : Reading is very interesting.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I am Ahmed and this is my picture of my classroom. We often use tablets in schools. There are two laptop computers in the classroom, too. One laptop has got a mouse. I don't know why it is called a mouse. There is a printer, too. I have got a mobile phone in my bag. I don't use it in the class. We shouldn't use a mobile phone in the class. Mr.

Nasser has got a mobile phone on his desk. He is charging it with a phone charger. He has got a new MP3 player. It is small and blue. Can you see it?

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What has Ahmed got in his bag?

2. Where do we often use tablets?

3. Do you think we should use a mobile phone in the class?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the _____.

- ☐ a laptop ☐ b mouse ☐ c tablet ☐ d MP3 player

5. There are _____ laptop computers in the classroom.

- ☐ a three ☐ b two ☐ c four ☐ d five

6. The laptop has got a/an _____.

- ☐ a mouse ☐ b board ☐ c MP3 player ☐ d pencil

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. _____ are animals that are like sheep.

- ☐ a Dinosaurs ☐ b Goats ☐ c Parrots ☐ d Cows

2. The _____ rings when a lesson starts and finishes.

- ☐ a bell ☐ b drum ☐ c telephone ☐ d ball

3. Mohammed Salah scores a lot of _____.

- ☐ a glasses ☐ b scarves ☐ c goals ☐ d goods

4. A _____ is used to make water hot.

- ☐ a key ☐ b cattle ☐ c kite ☐ d kettle

5. A _____ is a place to stay for a holiday.

- ☐ a holiday flat ☐ b library ☐ c castle ☐ d restaurant

6. When you do exercise and eat well, you become _____.

- ☐ a unhealthy ☐ b healthy ☐ c dirty ☐ d ugly

7. There isn't pollution in the country. It is clean.

- a** any **b** some **c** a **d** an

8. Heba learned how to cook in the lesson.

- a** music **b** art **c** home economics **d** Arabic

9. The ball is next the box.

- a** to **b** at **c** in **d** on

10. Has your brother long hair?

- a** get **b** gets **c** getting **d** got

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Don't eating when you use a computer. (.....)
2. This is Alis book. It is his. (.....)
3. He is read his English book now. (.....)
4. Where do you go last holiday? (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A day on the beach"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker goes to school by
 a bike b car c train d bus
2. They have in the playground.
 a lesson b break c school d friends
3. The lessons are in the
 a break b house c playground d classroom
4. The speaker to his friends at break.
 a studies b talks c draws d takes

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Manar and Nada are talking about a school subject.

- Manar** : Hi, Nada.
Nada : Hi, Manar.
Manar : What is your favourite subject?
Nada : My ① subject is English.
Manar : Who is our English ② this year?
Nada : Mr. Ayman.
Manar : When have we ③ English?
Nada : We have got English ④ Monday.
Manar : OK. ⑤ very much.
Nada : Goodbye.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mohamed Salah is a famous Egyptian footballer. He was born in 1992. He plays for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a fast runner. He has usually got a big smile. He is quite short for a footballer. He

is 1.75 metres tall. He has got curly hair. He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He is very friendly and he always talks to his fans.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

2. When was Mohamed Salah born?

3. What do you think of Mohamed Salah?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "He" refers to -----.

a Mohamad Salah **b** football **c** Europe **d** Egypt

5. Mohamed Salah plays for -----.

a Japan **b** America **c** Egypt **d** Morocco

6. Mohamed Salah has got ----- hair .

a straight **b** white **c** blond **d** curly

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I use the ----- to recharge my mobile phone.

a earphones **b** tablet **c** charger **d** mouse

2. There isn't ----- meat in koshari.

a some **b** many **c** a lot **d** any

3. The ----- in the mountain was dark.

a waterfall **b** cave **c** lake **d** river

4. Your ----- is your aunt or uncle's child.

a cousin **b** son **c** grandfather **d** brother

5. Does your father ----- to work early every day?

a goes **b** going **c** gone **d** go

6. Students should follow school
 a rules b roles c rolls d rulers
7. It is important to keep your password
 a clear b secret c popular d known
8. I with my father in Alexandria last summer.
 a swam b swim c swims d am swimming
9. You can have a wonderful from your room window.
 a review b interview c view d preview
10. Our teacher is very He always gives us good advice.
 a stupid b boring c bad d sensible

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. They write a letter now. (.....)
2. He reads never stories. (.....)
3. It is me book. It is mine. (.....)
4. We found Mona bag. (.....).

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your family"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam

9

دمياط - إدارة فرسكور



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Who is Heidi?

- a An orphan girl. b A student. c A nurse. d A doctor.

2. Where does Heidi's grandfather live?

- a In the mountain. b In the city. c In the village. d In the town.

3. Where does Heidi sleep?

- a In the attic. b On the chair. c In the garden. d On the floor.

4. Who takes Heidi to the city?

- a Her mother. b Her uncle. c Her aunt. d Her cousin.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Eslam and Amir are talking about their favourite sports star.

Eslam : Good morning. How are you?

Amir : Good morning. I'm fine thanks.

Eslam : 1 is your favourite sports star?

Amir : Mohamed Salah.

Eslam : What sport does he play?

Amir : He 2 football.

Eslam : What does he 3 ?

Amir : He is thin and has got curly 4

Eslam : Does he 5 goals?

Amir : Yes, he scores a lot of goals.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name's Lamia. I'm nine years old. I live in Aswan with my family. My parents are teachers. My brother Ali is 13 years old and Khaled is nine. I listen to music with my brothers. Ali plays football at school and he watches football matches on TV. Khaled goes swimming every Friday. There's a swimming pool near our house. My best friend is Aya. We play basketball at school, and we're both in the school team. Our team is very good!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

2. Who is older, Lamia or Ali?

3. Do you think Lamia's family is happy? Why / Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The swimming pool isn't

☐ a near their house

☐ b far from their house

☐ c by their house

☐ d beside their house

5. The underlined word "both" refers to

☐ a Lamia's parents

☐ b Aya and Khaled

☐ c Khaled and Ali

☐ d Lamia and Aya

6. The underlined "near" is the opposite of

☐ a cheap

☐ b hard

☐ c far

☐ d easy

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father's sister is my

☐ a uncle

☐ b aunt

☐ c cousin

☐ d daughter

2. Nada got blond hair.

☐ a has

☐ b have

☐ c having

☐ d is

3. _____ there any boys in the garden?
 a Is b Are c Do d Does
4. Keep your password _____.
 a secret b popular c slow d famous
5. A _____ is a big strong building from the past.
 a souvenir b castle c desert d hotel
6. We can _____ with our tongues.
 a smell b taste c touch d see
7. She _____ to the cinema last week.
 a go b going c went d goes
8. How long does it _____ to fly to Luxor?
 a taking b took c takes d take
9. To _____ is to sleep for a time in a tent.
 a comb b camp c climb d clap
10. When we hear the _____, we go to the school hall.
 a radio b ball c bell d noise

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Has your friend got straight hair? No, she haven't. (_____)
2. The cat is very fast. It's tail is long. (_____)
3. First, putting some water in the kettle. (_____)
4. Ali is read his English book now. (_____)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite place"



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is Mohamed Salah?

a A sports star

b A teacher

c A driver

d A doctor

2. Which sport does Salah play?

a Volleyball

b Football

c Tennis

d Basketball

3. What is Mohamed Salah very good at?

a Playing tennis

b Watching TV

c Scoring goals

d Doing homework

4. What kind of hair does Salah have?

a Curly hair

b Blond hair

c Straight hair

d Long hair

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Anas is asking his friend Adam about his favourite subject.

Anas : Hello, Adam.

Adam : Hello, Anas.

Anas : What is your favourite subject?

Adam : My ① is English.

Anas : ② do you like it?

Adam : Because it is an interesting subject.

Anas : How often do you ③ it?

Adam : I study it three ④ a week.

Anas : Do you like music?

Adam : Yes, I ⑤ it very much.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last weekend, I took my family to have lunch in a big restaurant in Alexandria. It's a famous restaurant. The waiter brought us the menu. I ordered chicken with rice. My wife asked for meat balls with pasta. My son ordered fish with salad. My daughter wanted to eat meat with potatoes. At the end of the meal, I had to pay a lot of money. The food was delicious, but the prices weren't good enough. The weather was great. We walked to our home happily.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

2. Where is the restaurant?

3. Do you think that the writer enjoyed eating in the restaurant? Why/ Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The mother ordered meat balls with
☐ a pasta ☐ b rice ☐ c salad ☐ d potatoes
5. The writer had to pay money.
☐ a little ☐ b less ☐ c much ☐ d few
6. The word means to ask for food or a drink in a restaurant.
☐ a take ☐ b order ☐ c bring ☐ d pay

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The is very high and there's lots of water in it.
☐ a beach ☐ b cave ☐ c lake ☐ d waterfall
2. At break, I play games with my friends in the
☐ a hall ☐ b classroom ☐ c playground ☐ d office

3. Hani uses a to go to school because he can't walk.
☐ a pencil case ☐ b wheelchair ☐ c sharpener ☐ d pencil
4. My cousin is very good gymnastics.
☐ a in ☐ b of ☐ c at ☐ d about
5. The is a room at the top of the house.
☐ a charger ☐ b break ☐ c Mp3 player ☐ d attic
6. Computers and mobile phone are examples of
☐ a technology ☐ b nature ☐ c subjects ☐ d farming
7. The opposite of "happy" is
☐ a bad ☐ b sad ☐ c mad ☐ d dad
8. Mona go to school on Friday.
☐ a don't ☐ b isn't ☐ c hasn't ☐ d doesn't
9. Mustafa loves art at school.
☐ a doing ☐ b do ☐ c did ☐ d done
10. My brother has a laptop.
☐ a gets ☐ b getting ☐ c gets ☐ d got

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Boils the water. (.....)
2. He visit his friends yesterday. (.....)
3. Adel can't find him book. (.....)
4. What are you do now? (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How to stay safe online"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 11

سوهاج - ادارة اضميم



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mum doesn't like

- a** watching sports **b** playing chess **c** eating pizza **d** driving cars

2. Dad likes

- a** English **b** Science **c** History **d** French

3. Nadia is years old.

- a** 51 **b** 50 **c** 5 **d** 15

4. Dad is always

- a** sad **b** happy **c** angry **d** busy

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ayman and Ali are talking about Siwa.

Ayman : Hello, Ali.

Ali : Hello, Ayman.

Ayman : Did you go to Siwa?

Ali : Yes, I ①

Ayman : When did you go there?

Ali : When I ② 8 years old.

Ayman : What did you do there?

Ali : I ③ in the lake.

Ayman : Where did you ④ there?

Ali : I slept in a ⑤ in the desert.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ali and his family decided to go on holiday for a week. They went near the sea. They went to Hurghada where water was very calm and warm. They liked diving and swimming. They also enjoyed seeing the colourful fish. Ali's wife liked fishing on a boat. Ali's son liked to go diving and do water sports. At noon, all the family went to the

cinema then they went to a restaurant to have their dinner. At the end of their holiday, they went shopping and bought some lovely presents for their friends.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What activities can you enjoy in Hurghada?

2. Where did Ali's family go at noon?

3. Who liked to go diving?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to -----.

- ☐ a lovely presents ☐ b water sports ☐ c Ali's family ☐ d Ali's friends

5. Ali's wife liked -----.

- ☐ a fishing ☐ b riding horses ☐ c running ☐ d reading

6. They bought ----- for their friends.

- ☐ a books ☐ b presents ☐ c clothes ☐ d food

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Clap for the football players; ----- play very well.

- ☐ a their ☐ b they ☐ c them ☐ d theirs

2. My father is very busy ----- he plays sports every day.

- ☐ a but ☐ b and ☐ c because ☐ d so

3. My aunt is very ----- . She always gives me presents.

- ☐ a poor ☐ b angry ☐ c kind ☐ d strong

4. ----- the icon on your mobile phone.

- ☐ a Tap ☐ b Make ☐ c Write ☐ d Click

5. Last summer, my family ----- a fantastic holiday.

- ☐ a hasn't ☐ b have ☐ c has ☐ d had

6. Ali usually arrives school at 7:15.

- a** in **b** on **c** at **d** by

7. We go to school on Friday.

- a** always **b** never **c** often **d** sometimes

8. On a weekend. I visit my grandmother.

- a** type **b** free **c** typical **d** holiday

9. There is a phone charger to the printer.

- a** next **b** under **c** behind **d** between

10. Crisps have a lot of and salt.

- a** chocolate **b** fat **c** fruit **d** sugar

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You should cleans your teeth in the morning. (.....)
2. There aren't enough milk to make hot chocolate. (.....)
3. My sister have got long hair. (.....)
4. Didn't walk on the grass. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Last holiday"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. Amal goes to school

a by bus

b by car

c on foot

d by taxi

2. Ola is than Amal.

a younger

b older

c smaller

d bigger

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- **Nasser** :

Mazin : I am reading a story.

2- **Waiter** : What would you like to drink?

You :

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. you listen to music?

a Are

b Do

c Does

d Have

2. My sister goes to a school.

a girls

b girl's

c girls'

d girl

3. It is very hot in the summer.

a never

b ever

c rarely

d usually

4. A brave person is happy to do something

a dangerous

b fun

c strange

d bad

5. Which of the following is not an ingredient?

a rice

b nuts

c raisins

d stir

6. My father and mother are my

a grandchildren

b parents

c cousins

d daughters

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Mona. I want to be a doctor. My favourite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak good English to talk to tourists from other countries. My teacher is very good. I also like to use technology. It is very useful. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What are Mona's favourite subjects?

.....

2. Why does she want to speak English?

.....

3. Is Mona right to use technology?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to

☐ a technology

☐ b tablet

☐ c subject

☐ d computer

5. What does Mona use to practise her English?

☐ a Her tablet

☐ b Her phone

☐ c Her laptop

☐ d a and b

E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"How you stay safe online"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Hazem plays on Sunday.
 a basketball b football c chess d the drums
2. Hazem goes swimming on
 a Saturday b Sunday c Monday d Friday

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1. Ali :

Ahmed : My favourite subject is English.

2. **Mona** : Has your brother got blond hair?

Ola :

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. There any tables in my classroom.
 a is b isn't c are d aren't
2. I'd love to go to the I can swim in the sea.
 a desert b jungle c beach d forest
3. Where your father work?
 a is b does c do d are
4. We go to school on Fridays.
 a never b sometimes c always d often
5. The word "strong" is the opposite of
 a kind b rich c slow d weak
6. Aya loves art at school.
 a do b doing c does d did

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Good food is important for our health. Fruit is very healthy and delicious. We should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day. Beans and vegetables don't have much sugar or fat. They are good for us, so we should eat a lot of them.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. How many pieces of fruit should we eat every day?

.....

2. Do beans and vegetables have much sugar or fat?

.....

3. What is important for our health?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

4. The underlined word "them" refers to

a fruit

b beans and vegetables

c sugar

d fat

5. Fruit is very and delicious.

a healthy

b unhealthy

c bad

d poor

E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your favourite hobby"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Sami's works in Paris, France.

- a** brother **b** father **c** uncle **d** cousin

2. He stays there days a week.

- a** three **b** four **c** five **d** six

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Sara :

Aya : My favourite hobby is swimming.

2- Hadi : What does your father look like?

Fadi :

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Some people say hello by their hands.

- a** putting **b** leaving **c** making **d** waving

2. There is some salt, but there any crisps.

- a** isn't **b** aren't **c** wasn't **d** weren't

3. A successful footballer always talks to his

- a** fans **b** fins **c** fats **d** figs

4. At school, you talk to your friends at break.

- a** must **b** mustn't **c** can **d** can't

5. The sun comes up in the west.

- a** always **b** often **c** sometimes **d** never

6. Hani and Aly are They are brothers and aged 12.

- a** double **b** twins **c** couple **d** pairs

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I'm Aya. I'm a student and this is a typical day for me. I go to school from Sunday to Thursday. On school days, I get up at half past six. I usually have breakfast with my family. My school is far away, so I never walk. It always takes a long time because the roads are busy. My school starts at 8:00 a.m. and finishes at 2:00 p.m. I have four lessons before the break and two lessons after it. The break is half an hour. During it, I usually talk with my friends, but sometimes I go to the library to read books. After school, I go home, have dinner, do my homework and watch TV with my brother. I usually go to bed at 9:00 p.m. I have a busy day.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the school day like?

.....

2. How many lessons does Aya have a day?

.....

3. Does Aya walk to school? Why? Why not?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

4. Aya goes to school days a week.

a four

b five

c six

d seven

5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the

a school

b class

c break

d library

E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your favourite sports star"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Where does Mr Taha work?

a Port Said

b Tanta

c Minia

d Cario

2. What does he usually eat for lunch?

a meat

b fish

c chicken

d pizza

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1. A :?

B : I use a laptop, but I don't use an MP3 player.

2. A : How do you travel to school?

B :

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. She has got blond

a eyes

b hair

c moustache

d beard

2. Are there computers in the classroom?

a any

b some

c much

d a

3. Ahmed doesn't basketball on Friday.

a plays

b is playing

c played

d play

4. We rode camels and in a tent in the desert.

a are sleeping

b sleep

c slept

d sleeps

5. He drink a lot of water.

a shouldn't

b has

c have

d should

6. They arrived Luxor two days ago.

a on

b in

c at

d for

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer, I travelled to Egypt because I wanted to learn Arabic. I went to a language school in Cairo. I had a wonderful time. I was there for two weeks. Cairo's shops are fantastic. I bought a lot of souvenirs. My favourite place was the Cairo Tower. I enjoyed the view from the top.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. When did the writer travel to Egypt?

2. How long did the writer stay there?

3. What did the writer buy?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

4. Cairo's shops are -----

a busy

b crowded

c enjoyable

d terrible

5. The view of the city was -----

a nice

b windy

c bad

d sad

E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Modern Technology"



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Reem comes from

a Benha

b Giza

c Tanta

d Cairo

2. Reem isn't good at

a Maths

b Art

c English

d Science

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1. **Mona** :

Farida : I have five lessons every day.

2. **Eman** : Do you like watching football matches?

Samira :

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. My best friend short dark hair.

a have got

b has got

c get

d is

2. A brave person is happy to do something

a fun

b strange

c dangerous

d bad

3. Maher voluntary work at hospital.

a does

b goes

c plays

d makes

4. She you a photo now.

a sends

b sending

c send

d is sending

5. Computers and mobile phones are examples of

a technology

b farming

c nature

d subjects

6. At break, I play with my friends in the

a bell

b classroom

c library

d playground

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Lamia. I'm 9 years old. I live in Aswan with my family. My parents are teachers. My brother Ali is 13 years old and Khaled is nine. Ali plays football at school and watches football matches on TV. Khaled goes swimming. My best friend is called Aya. We play basketball at school, and we are both in the school team.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. How many brothers has Lamia got?

2. What is Lamia's father's job?

3. Who is Aya?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

4. Lamia and Aya like -----.

a football

b basketball

c music

d swimming

5. Lamia and ----- are twins.

a Khaled

b Aya

c Ali

d Khaled and Ali

E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your holiday"

Paragraphs

فقرات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدات

Unit 1

1. My hobbies

Everyone should have a hobby. I have two different hobbies. I like sports and drawing pictures. I play football and basketball. I play football on Fridays. I play basketball on Mondays. I watch football matches on TV. I watch basketball matches in the club. Sports make my body strong. Playing sports helps me study well. In my free time, I draw pictures. I draw faces. I put them in my room. All my family like them.

2. A person in my family

I have a wonderful person in my family. It's my cousin Dina. She's a gymnast. She's 18 and lives in Cairo with her family. Dina has a very busy life. She goes to school and studies hard. In the evenings, she trains for five or six hours. She wants to go to the Olympics one day. Dina's family always helps her. They want her to achieve her goal. They are all proud of her. I hope I will be like her.

3. My best friend

I have got many friends. My best friend is Tamer. He is the same age as me. He lives in Cairo. He lives in the house next to mine. He plays football. It's his favourite hobby. We usually play football together. Tamer is clever at school. He likes maths and English. He doesn't like history. We usually go to school together. The school is near our house. We walk together to school. We always spend the weekend in the club.

4. My family (Azhar)

My name is Habib(a) and this is my family. This is my sister, her name is Radwa. She is

two years old and she's very beautiful. Nawal and Ayman are our parents. Our mother is a doctor and our father is a teacher.

5. My usual week

I usually get up at seven o'clock. I like sports. I play basketball on Tuesdays and Wednesdays. I go swimming on Mondays and I play football on Sundays. I like watching football matches on TV on Saturdays. I really like music. I like listening to music. I play the drums in a band. I also like playing chess with my brother in the evenings. He usually wins. I sometimes do voluntary work. I like helping in the children's hospital. I play games with the children and read them stories. It's great!

Unit 2

1. My day / What I do every day (Azhar)

I always have a busy day. I do many things every day. I get up at quarter past six. I usually have breakfast with my family. I always walk to school. It always takes a short time to go there. When we hear the bell at eight o'clock, we go to the school hall. We have four lessons, then it is break. We have more four lessons. I go home at 3 o'clock. I have a shower then I do my homework. At 9 o'clock, I go to bed.

2. My journey to school

On school days, I get up at half past six. I have a shower, then I have my breakfast. I don't want to be late for school. I like to arrive before the bell rings. I always go to school by bus. It always takes a long time to go to school. The streets in my town are always busy. I always talk to my friends on the bus. It's a nice journey. I like it very much.

3. What I usually do at the weekend

I am a student at prep school. I always study my lessons well. I often study every day. I like to do my homework, too. I never study at the weekend, but sometimes I read a book! I often go shopping with my mum. When it is not very hot, we usually go to the park. I usually meet my friends there. We always have a nice time there. This helps me study my lessons well again.

Unit 3

1. My favourite sports star

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He is Egyptian. He plays football very well. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. It's an English team. It's called "Liverpool". He plays for Egypt, too. He's a fast runner. He has got curly hair and a beard. He is not very tall. He scores a lot of goals. He is very kind. He gives money to poor people. He's very friendly. He always talks to his fans. He likes playing video games.

2. A blog post about myself

Hi! My name is Ayman. I've got long, curly hair. I live in Suez with my mum, dad and two sisters. I'm in prep one. I go to school on the school bus. All my teachers like me. I like them, too. My favourite subjects are science and art. I don't like maths. I'm not good at numbers. I often play sports after school. My favourite sport is karate. At home, I like reading and watching TV.

3. A character in a book or film

I love reading books by Charles Dickens. My favourite book is "Oliver Twist". It's about a boy who is poor and weak. He is an orphan boy. His mother dies when he is a baby. He lives nine years with a bad woman. He eats very little. He works hard. Thieves take him. They want him to steal. Oliver is a brave boy. He leaves the thieves and lives with

a good man. In the end, he lives a happy life. I like him because he is a sensible boy.

4. A blog post about a friend

Hi! I'd like to talk about my friend, Ziad. He lives in Tanta. He lives with his family in a big house. His father is a doctor. His mother is a teacher. The family has a big car. His father always drives him to school. He is very clever at school. He always comes first in exams. He has many friends. All his friends and teachers like him. Ziad is my best friend.

5. A person in my family "My grandfather" (Azhar)

My grandfather is called Tawfeek. I like him very much because he is very kind and friendly. He always talks to me and gives me useful advice. He is tall and he has got a long white beard and a moustache. He has got a farm and he worked hard when he was young.

6. My favourite book

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a children's story. Alice's adventure begins when she goes to Wonderland. Wonderland is a strange place. She is a sensible, brave girl. She meets a lot of interesting characters. Alice often sees the White Rabbit. The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal. The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a scary person. She is always angry and she shouts at people. At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again. I like that book because it is really interesting.

Unit 4

1. My classroom

I go to a prep school in our village. I have a big classroom. It is on the second floor in my school. There are about forty eight students in my class. I have so many classmates. They like me and we all play together. We have so many things

in the class. We have three computers in the classroom. Also, we have two tablets to help us study English and maths. I like my classroom because it is always clean and our teachers are so friendly.

2. Which do I like more, nature or technology?

I like nature. I enjoy going outside and looking at trees, flowers and rivers. I also like taking photos of those all. When it's fine, I spend much time at parks. I always go there with my friends. They're all use mobile phones. They like technology. They use social media all the time. I don't like that. Technology is useful, but I don't like it. I like nature more.

3. How to stay safe online

Most of us like technology! We like to go online. Sometimes we make friends online. We like playing games with our online friends. We should always try to stay safe online. We should never make friends with people we don't know. We should keep our passwords secret. We shouldn't send photos to people we don't know. We shouldn't tell anyone our personal information. We should tell our parents or teachers if we are worried about something. We shouldn't answer phone calls from anyone we don't know.

4. Nature (Azhar)

I love nature. I like walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects all around us. I don't like being in the house; I like being in the garden and looking at the sky. At school, I always go outside at break when it's very hot or cold! I've got a mobile phone and I take photos of flowers.

5. Technology in your classroom

Most schools use technology. My school uses technology, too. My classroom has got many important things. They are very useful. We often use tablets in our

classroom. There are two laptops on our teacher's desk. There's a printer, too. All students have got mobile phones. They are in their bags. We don't use mobile phones in the classroom. Our teacher's got an MP3 player. It's small and blue. He has got a mobile phone on his desk. He has got a phone charger, too.

Unit 5

1. My last weekend

I always remember my last weekend. It was fun. We went to Hurghada. The weather was nice. We enjoyed the beautiful beach. We stayed in a holiday flat by the beach. We had a wonderful view from the windows. I saw dolphins in the sea. We swam every day. We visited famous places. I bought many souvenirs for my friends. We made sandcastles on the beach. We ate delicious food there. I want to go there again.

2. What did I do last summer?

Last summer, I went to Sharm El Sheikh. I went there with my family. We went there because the weather was wonderful and the beaches were very interesting. I spent all the day on the beach making sandcastles and swam in the sea. I camped next to a big mountain and saw its caves at night. We went shopping every day. I bought nice souvenirs to my friends. Really, the place was attractive and everyone enjoyed the visit.

3. A visit to Paris

I visited Paris with my family last year. We had a wonderful time. It's a great city for a holiday. There was so much to see and do. I ate many kinds of food. It was delicious. We visited the Eiffel Tower. From the top we had a view of the city. We went on a boat on the river Seine. We had a picnic in the Luxembourg Gardens. We saw the art at the Louvre. We bought souvenirs for our friends. It was a fantastic holiday.

4. A journey I went on (Azhar)

Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station, then we got on the train. There were people from many countries on the train. The train left Cairo at 10 o'clock, and soon we passed Giza. I enjoyed the view from the window and I saw the Nile where there were lots of boats.

5. A day on the beach

We went to the beach last weekend. When we arrived there, it was very windy and the sea was high. Then the wind stopped. The sea became calm. We swam in the wonderful water. We sat on the beach. We ate sandwiches. We drank juice. We made sandcastles. We flew kites. We played interesting games. We went fishing in a boat. There were many kinds of fish. We saw dolphins. It was a wonderful day.

Unit 6

1. The food I like in my kitchen

I like to have many kinds of foods in my kitchen. I like meat, chicken, rice, vegetables. I like to have healthy food at home. We all should have little salt and sugar in our food, too much salt is not healthy for us. That's why I don't like crisps. Also I like to have fresh fruit in my kitchen. Doctors say that fruit and juice with little sugar are very healthy.

2. My favourite meal "Koshari"

We have many kinds of foods in Egypt, but I like Koshari the most. It is my favourite meal as it is easy to make and delicious to eat especially when I'm hungry. I like it because it has many ingredients; it has rice, pasta tomatoes and many other spices. Although spices aren't good for us, I like to have them in my Koshari. It is very popular. Many people like it.

3. A healthy meal

Food is very important for us, so it should be healthy and fresh. I always have many vegetables at different meals every day. Meat, chicken and potatoes are good for our health, that's why my mother always cooks them for us. I think we all should have little salt in our food as it isn't healthy. A healthy meal shouldn't be too spicy, or too sweet. We need to look after our health and have healthy meals.

4. Food we should or shouldn't eat

Some people eat lots of pizzas, sweets, chips, cakes and biscuits. Unhealthy food makes your body unhealthy. When you get older, you start to have some of health problems. But, most of us don't think much about the future. We only think about today. We only think that hamburgers taste better than salad. We think drinks with a lot of sugar are nicer than water. If you want to be healthy, you must eat healthy food and take some exercise every day.

5. My favourite food (Azhar)

There are many kinds of food which can be healthy or unhealthy. We should eat healthy food. My favourite food is salad and meat which I eat them with each meal. Salad is very healthy because it contains many kinds of vegetables. I don't add too much salt to the salad because it is unhealthy.

6. A meal I remember

A meal which I always remember is fish and rice. I ate them at a great restaurant in Alexandria. I went there with my family. The restaurant was very near the sea so the fish was very fresh. We chose the fish and the chef cooked it for us. My parents ate their favourite fish and my brother enjoyed watching the boats on the sea. I hope we can go back to this restaurant again soon.

healthy. When I eat fish, I never put salt on it. Salt isn't good for health.

Osama had lunch at a nice restaurant yesterday. He ordered pizza and salad. His sister, Shimaa ordered tagine. His mother ordered chicken. His father ordered rice and meat. They had ice cream for dessert.

Review B

I'm Azza. I had a wonderful time in Paris. Paris is a great city for a holiday. I bought a T-shirt and postcards. I visited the Eiffel Tower. I had a good time there. I came back a month ago.

WB End of term practice

My name's Shorouk. I go to school with my friends Lubna and Alaa. I'm a student in preparatory stage. My father and mother work in the same hospital.

Exam 1

My name is Asem. I live with my grandfather on his farm. He is a good farmer. I help my grandfather to grow many plants.

Exam 2

Mazen and Hatem are twins. They help in the hospital every Sunday. Hatem likes playing football. They sometimes play chess together.

Exam 3

Last month, we went to Siwa. We saw many camels there. We caught fish in the lake. We slept in a tent. It was a happy holiday.

Exam 4

I like my school very much. I go to my school on foot. We have lessons in the classroom. We have break in the playground. I talk to my friends at break.

Exam 5

Amira is thirteen years old. She lives in Giza. She is in grade one at prep school. She likes all her subjects, but she likes maths best.

Exam 6

Mona is fifteen years old. She lives in a big city. She likes to play tennis. She trains every day for three hours.

Exam 7

Yara is a good girl. She is twelve years old.

She lives in Aswan with her family. Yara's father is a famous doctor.

Exam 8

I'm in prep one. I go to school by bike. When we finish our classes, we talk to each other and play at break in the playground.

Exam 9

Heidi is an orphan girl. She lives with her grandfather in a village. She sleeps in the attic of the house. Her uncle usually takes her to the city.

Exam 10

Mohamed Salah is a famous Egyptian footballer. He plays for a good team in Europe. He is good at scoring goals. He has got curly hair and a beard.

Exam 11

My father is always happy. He likes watching science programmes. My mother doesn't like sports programmes. She always watches films with my fifteen-year-old sister Nadia.

Exam 12

Amal is twelve years old. Her older sister Ola goes to the same school. They always go to school on foot.

Exam 13

My name is Hazem. I love sports very much. I play basketball every Sunday. I sometimes go swimming on Friday.

Exam 14

Sami's father is a famous scientist. He works in Paris, France. He works there five days a week. He spends the weekend in Cairo.

Exam 15

Mr Taha works in a prep school in Minia. He likes to have lunch at break time; he eats fish every day.

Exam 16

Reem is a good student. She is in a prep school in Tanta. She likes English but she isn't good at maths.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

أهم الافعال غير المنتظمة الواردة بالمنهج

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
be (am / is / are)	يكون	was / were	been
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
build	يبنى	built	built
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
catch	يمسك	cought	caught
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
come	يأتي	came	come
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove	driven
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
find	يجد	found	found
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
get	يحصل على	got	got
give	يعطي	gave	given
go	يذهب	went	gone
have	يملك	had	had
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
keep	يحفظ بـ	kept	kept
learn	يتعلم	learnt	learnt
make	يصنع / يجعل	made	made

meet	يقابل	met	met
put	يضع	put	put
read	يقرأ	read	read
ride	يركب (دراجة / حيوان)	rode	ridden
ring	يرن	rang	rung
run	يجري	ran	run
say	يقول	said	said
see	يرى	saw	seen
send	يرسل	sent	sent
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
spend	يقضى (وقت) - ينفق (مال)	spent	spent
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
take	يأخذ	took	taken
tell	يخبر	told	told
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
wake	يستيقظ	woke	woken
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
win	يفوز	won	won
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Bit by Bit

كتاب في اللغة الإنجليزية



الصف الأول الإعدادي

الفصل الدراسي الأول

NEW
Hello! 2023

كراسة تسميع المفردات والواجب المنزلي

دار غزة



للمطبوع والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com

FIRST
TERM

1

ST
PREP

Unit 1 My family and me

Lessons 1 & 2



كَلَامُنْ / كلاهما	يُسَمَّى
اختبار قصير	لعبة الشطرنج
أم	فرقة موسيقية
أب	أحد الوالدين
يوم ميلاد	رياضة
مفضل	حقيقي
يصفق	مؤنث / أنثى
يلعب / يعزف	طبلة
أخ	ابنة
جد	توأم
أخت	مقابلة شخصية
مفكرة يومية - يوميات	عمة / خالة
هواية	مذكر / ذكر
عم / خال	يبلغ من العمر
مختلف	ابن
ابن / ابنة (العم / العمة / الخال / الخالة)	جدة
	محاوِر
أبناء الأحفاد	فخور
	الجد الأكبر
مباراة كرة قدم	رائع / عظيم
آلات موسيقية	عمل تطوعي

Homework Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mustafa and Sherif are talking about Mustafa's father.

Sherif : Hello, Mustafa. Can I ask you a question?

Mustafa : 1

Sherif : What does 2 ?

Mustafa : My father is a doctor.

Sherif : Where does 3 ?

Mustafa : He works in a hospital in Alexandria.

Sherif : How does he go there?

Mustafa : 4 by train.

Sherif : When does he come back?

Mustafa : He comes back 5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother's sister is my

- a** grandmother **b** sister **c** aunt **d** daughter

2. Aliaa always plays with her They are really friendly.

- a** parks **b** stories **c** matches **d** cousins

3. This is my His name is Mustafa.

- a** sister **b** son **c** daughter **d** aunt

4. Muhammad likes to do work. He likes helping people.

- a** voluntary **b** bad **c** unimportant **d** angry

5. Imad loves playing the drums in a

- a** cinema **b** bank **c** quiz **d** band

6. All Egyptians are of Muhammad Salah.

- a** kind **b** proud **c** bad **d** angry

7. My favourite hobby is playing
a cheese **b** chase **c** chess **d** check
8. I never music.
a build **b** play **c** listen **d** go
9. Your is your mother or father's father.
a son **b** brother **c** grandfather **d** uncle
10. Menna and Mariam are sisters who are the same age. They are
a twins **b** two **c** twice **d** teams
11. This book belongs to me. It's
a her **b** my **c** me **d** mine
12. Soad is my aunt. is a nurse.
a She **b** He **c** I **d** You
13. What is father's name?
a yours **b** he **c** you **d** your
14. Why didn't the girls clean room?
a there **b** their **c** them **d** they
15. That bag belongs to Ali. It's
a his **b** him **c** he **d** her

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- This isn't my pen. It's your. (.....)
- 2- Ahmed has a new car. She is happy. (.....)
- 3- Please, lend me yours camera. (.....)
- 4- My bag is blue, but Salah is red. (.....)
- 5- The girls always help there mother. (.....)
- 6- Tarek is a doctor. He's father is a doctor, too. (.....)
- 7- A: Who house is that? B: It's ours. (.....)

4 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"Your grandfather"

Handwriting practice lines for the dictation exercise.



كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية

احجز نسختك من

المراجعة النهائية

الصف الاول الاعدادي
تدريبات - امتحانات

Lessons

3

&

4



مطار	كم مدة...؟
مكالمة فيديو	محل
يتواصل	أيضاً
مرتفع	أو
حزين	مدينة [كبيرة]
يضيف	مغامرة
على حق	غرفة بأعلى المنزل
خبر	جبل
زهرة	يتيم
متنزه	ماعز
جبن	قمة / أعلى الشئ
صغير في السن	مستشفى
مصرف / (بنك)	يبقى / يقيم
شاطئ	

Homework

Exercises on Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Alaa to music every day.
☐ a listen ☐ b listens ☐ c listening ☐ d to listen
- Mr Muhammad is a teacher. He us English.
☐ a teaches ☐ b teach ☐ c teaching ☐ d are teaching
- Adam work at a school?
☐ a Do ☐ b Has ☐ c Is ☐ d Does
- We've got boxes of old clothes in the
☐ a kettle ☐ b attic ☐ c fridge ☐ d oven
- Our trip to the mountain was an interesting
☐ a picture ☐ b meal ☐ c match ☐ d adventure
- The children travelled to Alex and enjoyed playing on the
☐ a peach ☐ b beach ☐ c sky ☐ d cloud
- It's very difficult to climb up this
☐ a mountain ☐ b river ☐ c cloud ☐ d sky
- What time do you come from school?
☐ a to home ☐ b in home ☐ c home ☐ d at home
- I with many friends on Facebook.
☐ a communicate ☐ b travel ☐ c prefer ☐ d visit
- Sara her mother at home.
☐ a helps always ☐ b always help ☐ c always helps ☐ d help always
- I like listening to pop music.
☐ a doesn't ☐ b does ☐ c am not ☐ d don't
- My plane leaves from Cairo at 6:00 pm.
☐ a station ☐ b playground ☐ c airport ☐ d attic
- A child with no mother or father is a/an
☐ a parent ☐ b orphan ☐ c cousin ☐ d boy

14. Don't much salt; it isn't healthy.

a add

b play

c move

d come

15. How were the climbers able to get to the of the mountain?

a type

b top

c tap

d tape

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Does he visits his aunt every week? (.....)

2- I doesn't play football on Mondays. (.....)

3- How many wheels do a car have? (.....)

4- Where are you live, Mr Hossam? (.....)

5- He always fails an exam. He's very clever. (.....)

6- He drink tea every day. (.....)

7- Habiba never come home late. (.....)

3 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"A story you enjoyed reading"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons

5

6



صعب	عُمر
قريب	الألعاب الأولمبية
يحب	يحقّق/ينجز
أفضل/أول	شجرة العائلة
يوازن	حلم
مشغول/مزدحم	يذاكر بجد
لاعب رياضي	ينتقل إلى
لعبة الجمباز	صحي
أفضل صديق	يبقى قوي
مدينة دمياط	لاعبة جمباز
ألعاب القوى	يتدرب
مادة الفيزياء	فريق
الرياضيات	حمام سباحة

Homework

Exercises on Speaking & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Eyad and Ramy are talking about Ramy's family.

Eyad : Do you have brothers, Ramy?

Ramy : Yes, I ① two brothers.

Eyad : What ② ?

Ramy : Magid and Ziad.

Eyad : How old are they?

Ramy : They are 13 years old. They are ③

Eyad : What is your father?

Ramy : He is a ④ He works at our school.

Eyad : What is your ⑤ ?

Ramy : She's a nurse.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My favourite sport is

- a** gymnastics **b** geography **c** adventure **d** mountain

2. I can't meet Mr Ahmed today. I'm too

- a** empty **b** free **c** busy **d** careful

3. Good players usually for many hours.

- a** rain **b** fly **c** teach **d** train

4. Adel goes to the swimming every week.

- a** pool **b** ball **c** boat **d** pass

5. Ali studies to get high marks.

- a** hardly **b** hard **c** friendly **d** carelessly

6. is the study of numbers.

- a** Physics **b** Athletics **c** Mathematics **d** Economics

7. There are eleven players in a football

- a** team **b** band **c** group **d** fan

8. Hossam is my friend.

- a** test **b** least **c** best **d** better

9. I hope you will your goals.

- a** achieve **b** fail **c** lose **d** train

10. A is a person who does gymnastics.

- a** trainer **b** gymnast **c** footballer **d** coach

3 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"Your father"

Unit 2 It's my favourite subject

Lessons 1 & 2



الغة العربية	أحياناً
مزدحم/ مشغول	التربية الموسيقية
اللغة الإنجليزية	مادة الرياضيات
اختلاف	جدول الحصص
فترة استراحة	مادة التربية الفنية (الرسم)
طريقة	دائماً
رُبَّ	العالم
نصف	التربية الدينية
يومي	جرس
طريق	ردهة (قاعة كبيرة)
الطيران	ناظر المدرسة
رحلة قصيرة	ملعب/ فناء
مادة الفن المسرحي	عادة
غالباً	إبداً
الاقتصاد المنزلي	نموذجي (معتاد)
مادة العلوم	مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية
مكتبة (للقرأة واستعارة الكتب)	مادة الحاسب الآلي
	مادة التربية البدنية (الرياضية)

Homework

Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Amal and Injy are talking about the timetable.

Amal : Hi, Injy! How are you?

Injy : Hi, Amal! I'm fine. What do you think of the new ①_____?

Amal : I like the new timetable. ②_____ your favourite day, Injy?

Injy : I like Thursday.

Amal : What ③_____ have you got on this day?

Injy : We have got social studies first, then we have got English and science.

Amal : Today, ④_____ after break. I love maths!

Injy : When have we got Drama?

Amal : ⑤_____ on Tuesday.

Injy : It's time for the next lesson now! See you later!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Aya _____ hard for her exams.

a studies always

b always study

c often study

d always studies

2. At the end of the day at school, the _____ rings.

a ball

b bill

c pole

d bell

3. We learn about cooking in _____ economics.

a home

b hall

c house

d room

4. We use numbers in _____ lessons.

a drama

b music

c maths

d social studies

5. My father _____ gives me good advice.

a no

b always

c don't

d not

6. The students play football in the _____ at school.
☐ a playground ☐ b zoo ☐ c museum ☐ d library
7. At school, we _____ eight lessons a day.
☐ a make ☐ b do ☐ c have ☐ d play
8. Hossam and Saber _____ do bad things.
☐ a don't ☐ b doesn't ☐ c aren't ☐ d hasn't
9. We draw and paint pictures in _____ lessons.
☐ a English ☐ b drama ☐ c maths ☐ d art
10. They play the guitar in _____ lessons.
☐ a science ☐ b music ☐ c maths ☐ d art
11. Friday is a _____ day for me for a holiday.
☐ a careless ☐ b helpful ☐ c typical ☐ d kind
12. You can borrow books from the _____.
☐ a museum ☐ b library ☐ c cinema ☐ d zoo
13. A: How _____ do you get up at 5 o'clock? B: Never.
☐ a old ☐ b many ☐ c long ☐ d often
14. _____ Mohamed Salah play well?
☐ a Do ☐ b Has ☐ c Is ☐ d Does
15. My dad always _____ me to school.
☐ a makes ☐ b rides ☐ c drives ☐ d runs

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- Tamer always comes late. He comes early every day. (_____)
- 2- Khalid always is polite. (_____)
- 3- Ali comes sometimes home at 6. (_____)
- 4- What are you know about computers? (_____)
- 5- Alaa didn't watch TV when he has exams. (_____)

6- How old do you go to the cinema? (-----)

7- Does you like pizza? - No, I don't. (-----)

4 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"Your school day"



قارب صغير خفيف	النقل والمواصلات
جاكيت	زحافة جليد
مقلمة	سريع
دراجة نارية (موتوسيكل)	هام
دفتر / كراس	جانب - ناحية
يتبع	جليد
منشفة (فوطه)	يقود دراجة
رخيص	دراجة (هوائية)
قميص	ممتع
ملك من...؟	شكل
دولة أوغندا	قرية
الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	صحى
مرة أخرى	خطير
قبعة	بالخارج
تمطر	قواعد مدرسية
آمن	مكتب
كم طول (المدة الزمنية)....؟	زى مدرسى
	جمل

Homework Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mariam and Fatma are talking about things in the classroom.

Mariam : Hi, Fatma.

Fatma : Hi, Mariam. Is this ① _____ ?

Mariam : No, it's Judy's pen. She always uses it.

Fatma : OK. ② _____ bag is this?

Mariam : It's Huda's bag.

Fatma : No, it's not Huda's bag. ③ _____ bag is red. This bag is blue.

Mariam : Oh, OK. Then it's Malak's bag.

Fatma : There's a book on the desk. Is that ④ _____ book?

Mariam : No, it's the ⑤ _____. All teachers use that book.

Fatma : Ah, I know whose ruler this is. It has Azza's names on it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The plane is a fast form of _____.

- a** transport **b** gymnastics **c** journey **d** canoe

2. I need to make a _____ phone call.

- a** dark **b** terrible **c** quick **d** slow

3. Those are my _____ bicycles. They are theirs.

- a** friends' **b** friend's **c** friends **d** friend

4. An _____ break is important for you.

- a** hours **b** hour **c** hours' **d** hour's

5. Some students in the USA go to school on _____.

- a** radios **b** showers **c** mobiles **d** snowmobiles

6. In Africa, some students go to school in a _____.

- a** can **b** canoe **c** cone **d** cane

7. I like watching films. It's _____.

- a** sunny **b** fan **c** fun **d** fall

8. Many children in Egypt _____ to school.

- a** cycle **b** circle **c** throw **d** hear

9. My uncle is my _____ brother.
☐ a mother ☐ b mothers ☐ c mother's ☐ d mothers'
10. What is your _____ name?
☐ a father's ☐ b fathers ☐ c father ☐ d fathers'
11. _____ car is this?
☐ a Who is ☐ b Who's ☐ c Who ☐ d Whose
12. My school _____ is a red shirt and black trousers.
☐ a uniform ☐ b turn ☐ c unit ☐ d form
13. I like riding my _____ at the nearby park.
☐ a kite ☐ b bike ☐ c cake ☐ d break
14. All students must follow the school _____.
☐ a roles ☐ b rooms ☐ c rules ☐ d rulers
15. He _____ his new clothes and went out.
☐ a wore ☐ b played ☐ c were ☐ d put

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- Ola's and Leila's mother is a doctor. (-----)
- 2- Maher and Nour's fathers are engineers. (-----)
- 3- I asked for a three week's holiday. (-----)
- 4- He works in a girls school. (-----)
- 6- Osama house is very big. (-----)
- 6- Dinas father is a teacher. (-----)
- 7- The childrens' clothes are in the bag. (-----)

4 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"How you go to school"

Lessons

5

6



عَلِمَ	دُش
أَيْضًا	جيد في
نهاية	مشروع
وجبة العشاء	مادة دراسية
فأرة الكمبيوتر	مفضل
دولة إنجلترا	فقط
دولة إسكتلندا	حقًا
يذهب للتسوق	مدينة الغردقة
لغة	في الفراش
إلى حد ما/إلى حد كبير	ياخذ دُش
صيحة للتعبير عن الفرحة	أفضل الأمنيات
(مادة) اللغة الفرنسية	إنها المفضلة لدى
الصف الأول الإعدادي	سيئ (ضعيف المستوى) في
في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	

Homework

Exercises on Speaking & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Amira is feeling tired.

Amira : I'm feeling tired.

Noha : ① sleep well last night?

Amira : No, I didn't. I was doing the maths ②

Noha : Oh! It's a difficult one.

Amira : ③ you often stay up late?

Noha : No, ④

Amira : OK! ⑤ we got maths?

Noha : It's after break.

Amira : So, let's go to our classroom.

Noha : OK.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mustafa goes to school every day. He is in one.

- a** preparatory **b** mark **c** degree **d** greed

2. A: I have a test today.

B: Best

- a** dishes **b** showers **c** flashes **d** wishes

3. A: What is your favourite ?

B: Maths.

- a** sport **b** subject **c** food **d** hobby

4. It's too hot. I want to have a

- a** sure **b** shore **c** shower **d** share

5. I watched the film and liked its very much.

- a** end **b** scenery **c** weekend **d** view

6. I like cheese. It's my food.

- a** favour **b** quite **c** bad **d** favourite

7. I don't _____ shopping. I buy things online.

- a** take **b** go **c** do **d** give

8. There's a _____ in the playground of our school. It has three colours.

- a** film **b** flag **c** hall **d** mall

9. Do you work _____ computers?

- a** about **b** to **c** with **d** over

10. This new book is _____ good.

- a** quit **b** quick **c** quiet **d** quite

3 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"Your favourite school subjects"

[illegible]

Test on Units 1 & 2

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب.

1. The speaker lives in
a Cairo **b** Alexandria **c** Fayoum **d** Minia
2. The speaker's father is a/ an
a driver **b** engineer **c** teacher **d** doctor
3. The speaker has a family.
a happy **b** sad **c** bad **d** big
4. The speaker lives in a
a village **b** city **c** hotel **d** lake

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Samy is asking Farid about the school timetable.

Samy : Good morning, Farid. What subjects have we got today?

Farid : We have ①

Samy : Who is our Arabic teacher?

Farid : ②

Samy : What have we got after Arabic?

Farid : After Arabic, we have ③

Samy : Are you good ④ ?

Farid : I'm quite good at it.

Samy : When have ⑤ ?

Farid : Break is after computer studies.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Amgad. I have moved to a new school in Tanta. I miss my old friends in Giza. I'm lucky because the school is near to my new house. It

takes about five minutes from home. It's a big one and my class has three computers and four tablets to use them. We have a big playground to play football and basketball. My school starts tomorrow, so I need to sleep early and get ready for it.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where did they play football?

2. Where is Amgad's new school?

3. Why is Amgad lucky?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "one" refers to Amgad's

- a** home **b** friend **c** school **d** city

5. Amgad takes time to go to his school.

- a** more **b** much **c** a lot of **d** little

6. Amgad used to live in

- a** Tanta **b** Giza **c** Alexandria **d** Cairo

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Cairo and Alexandria are

- a** hotels **b** streets **c** cities **d** shops

2. Tourists sometimes visit deserts and mountains.

- a** ride **b** drive **c** clean **d** climb

3. Sandy likes to draw in her class.

- a** music **b** art **c** drama **d** maths

4. They TV at night.

- a** watches **b** watch sometimes
c watching **d** sometimes watch

Test

5. This is _____ new school bag.
a Omnia **b** Omnias **c** Omnia's **d** Omnia'
6. I'd like to _____ shopping with my mum.
a do **b** go **c** play **d** drive
7. He took a taxi to _____ his train on time.
a miss **b** feel **c** lose **d** catch
8. _____ the players playing well?
a Is **b** Was **c** Are **d** Have
9. Salma spends a lot of time talking _____ the phone.
a in **b** at **c** by **d** on
10. My English teacher is _____ Shereen.
a called **b** cooled **c** killed **d** sailed

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I want mine books. (_____)
2. Hamdy helps always his father. (_____)
3. Alis car is very fast. (_____)
4. They go never to school on Friday. (_____)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"What your favourite school subject is"

Unit 3 Different people

Lessons

1

&

2



فقير	عطوف
رمادى اللون	شعر مجعد
وشاح (طرحة)	شارب (شنب)
ضعيف	نظارة
ناعم	يحرز / يسجل (اهداف / نقاط)
ودود	شعر قصير
غير ودود	ملكة
لاعب كرة قدم	شعر طويل
صغير الطائر	غنى
حياة عادية	يقفز
بلطف	نجم رياضى
هدية	سمات / صفات
ابتسامة / يبتسم	شعر غير مجعد
قارة أوروبا	شعر داكن
لحية (شعر الذقن والوجه)	يحمل
شعر اشقر	غير عطوف
معجب / مشجع	مشهور
ذراع	هدف (فى مباراة)
شخص سريع الجرى	قوى
	العب الفيديو

Homework Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Karim is talking to Ashraf about his best friend.

Karim : What is this photo, Ashraf?

Ashraf : It is a photo of my best friend.

Karim : What does he ①

Ashraf : He is tall with ②

Karim : Does he do sport?

Ashraf : ③

Karim : ④

Ashraf : He plays tennis.

Karim : Is he the same age as you?

Ashraf : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My favourite is Ronaldo. He wears the No. 7 T-shirt.

- ☐ a farmer ☐ b sports star ☐ c nurse ☐ d vet

2. My grandfather has got a on his mouth.

- ☐ a moustache ☐ b goal ☐ c shirt ☐ d skin

3. Shaza is very She gives her brothers her toys.

- ☐ a tall ☐ b kind ☐ c bad ☐ d angry

4. **A:** Has your father got a car? **B:** Yes, he

- ☐ a have ☐ b can ☐ c is ☐ d has

5. Mr Amin wears when he reads a book.

- ☐ a glass ☐ b a glass ☐ c glasses ☐ d class

6. She's got long hair.

- ☐ a band ☐ b blond ☐ c pond ☐ d fond

7. My father has got a on his face.

- ☐ a beard ☐ b board ☐ c bread ☐ d broad

8. When I meet my friends, I always have a big

- ☐ a smell ☐ b sale ☐ c smile ☐ d small

9. Al-Ahly has got a lot of _____ all over Egypt.
a fans **b** diaries **c** presents **d** metres
10. The Cairo _____ is the tallest building in Cairo.
a Tour **b** Tower **c** Tyre **d** Tap
11. Salah is a good player. He _____ a lot of goals.
a talks **b** jumps **c** paints **d** scores
12. I can play football, but I _____ play tennis.
a am **b** can't **c** have **d** is
13. Mr Muhammad _____ speak English. He travels to London a lot.
a can **b** can't **c** have **d** has
14. Mustafa _____ got long hair.
a is **b** was **c** has **d** does
15. You _____ drive a car. You are too young.
a are **b** have **c** can **d** can't

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- Have your teacher got a beard? (-----)
- 2- Dina haven't got glasses. (-----)
- 3- My sister has getting short, curly hair. (-----)
- 4- People can smoke in hospitals. (-----)
- 5- Can you swimming across this river? (-----)
- 6- Hesham has get a toy car. (-----)
- 7- He is a fast runner. He can't run fast. (-----)

4 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"A famous sports star"

Lesson

3



متصل بالإنترنت	منشور في مدونة
مادة العلوم	يوميات
يذهب للسباحة	ممل
قصة	الرسم
مرتان	تعلم
يرسم بالألوان	كل شيء عن
يدرس مادة الرياضيات	السباحة
يرسم	بانتظام
موقع على الإنترنت	مادة الرياضيات
ينظر إلى	أحسننا!
الرسم بالألوان	يتعلم عن
مادة التاريخ	جيد / سوء في
الرسم بالقلم الرصاص / الجاف	ألعاب الكمبيوتر
يعمل الواجب المنزلي	كيف تعمل الأشياء

Homework

Exercises on Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Do you like _____ to the cinema, Doha?
 a go b going c went d to going
- I go to the club _____ a week.
 a two b second c twice d first
- The film is _____. I don't like it.
 a interesting b cheap c nice d boring
- I'm fond of colours; I like _____.
 a painting b playing c pointing d planning
- I visit my grandparents _____.
 a really b regularly c nearly d rarely
- I have a _____ which I write on every day.
 a clock b team c playground d blog
- The internet has got many useful _____.
 a websites b seats c windows d teams
- _____ English is not very easy.
 a Playing b Scoring c Watching d Learning
- I can send text messages _____.
 a online b line c outline d in line

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- They doesn't like reading stories. (_____)
- I love sports, but I like playing tennis. (_____)
- Do Ayman like swimming? (_____)
- The students enjoy play in the playground. (_____)
- I like send emails to my friends. (_____)

Lessons 4, 5 & 6



اختلاف	ماهر
الريف	متعة - شخص او شئ مسلي
قرار	متأخر
بنت يتيمة	مغامرة
حوض (سباحة)	كرسي متحرك
مغا/سوتا	فكاهي/مضحك
مخيف / مرعوب	غريب
يصيح	يُسمى / يُدعى
المظهر	رائع / بارد
شجاع	خطير
شخصية	خائف / مرعوب
غاضب	عاقِل / رزين
مثير	شخصية (في كتاب / فيلم)
عاصفة	مشغول
ارض العجائب	جملون
شيق	شخص
لطيف	رئيسي / أساسي
عينان بنية اللون	مهم
	يفتح

Homework

Exercises on Speaking & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer invites Yara to his birthday party.

Tamer : Hello! Yara.

Yara : Hello! Tamer.

Tamer : I invite you to my birthday party tonight.

Yara : OK! ① to meet our friends.

Tamer : Sure. All of them are coming. Do you know my new friend Hanad?

Yara : No. What does she ② ?

Tamer : She has ③ short, curly hair.

Yara : ④ ?

Tamer : She is kind and funny.

Yara : Great! ⑤ meet her.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Abdullah is always He never comes on time.

a clever

b late

c nice

d early

2. The man can't walk, so he uses a

a tyre

b wheel

c wheelchair

d whale

3. This is my daughter. She is Mona.

a calls

b to calling

c call

d called

4. Children mustn't play with matches. It is

a dangerous

b brave

c famous

d safe

5. Gamil and Fady always play

a other

b another

c together

d brother

6. Eman and I always play games at the weekend.

a angry

b interesting

c busy

d frightened

7. The girl saw a snake. It was
☐ a scared ☐ b poor ☐ c brave ☐ d scary
8. A polite boy doesn't at his friends.
☐ a shout ☐ b show ☐ c shake ☐ d share
9. Don't be ; I'll buy you another toy.
☐ a cool ☐ b hungry ☐ c clever ☐ d angry
10. The main in that film is really brave.
☐ a chef ☐ b chart ☐ c character ☐ d chair
11. She's nice; she's got a good
☐ a appearance ☐ b discovery ☐ c fun ☐ d danger
12. A/An student does his / her homework well.
☐ a angry ☐ b clever ☐ c late ☐ d strange
13. I like Mr Ihab; he's very
☐ a strange ☐ b scary ☐ c sensible ☐ d unkind
14. All the neighbours help Ola, she's a/an girl.
☐ a orphan ☐ b bad ☐ c angry ☐ d dangerous
15. I go to the swimming every Friday.
☐ a ball ☐ b pool ☐ c bell ☐ d bill

3 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"The character you like best in a story"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 4 We're using technology

Lessons 1 & 2



فأرة الكمبيوتر (ماوس)	التكنولوجيا
بجوار	أشياء
خلف	معلومات
طابعة	قريب من
موقع على الإنترنت	أمام
سبورة بيضاء	تحت
صورة سيلفي	أيقونة / رمز
مكالمة فيديو	حديث / معاصر
يشحن	قطعة شطرنج
يطبع	زميل الفصل
كمبيوتر محمول	يضغط على زر / نقرة
هاتف جوال	رسالة نصية
مشغل ملفات الصوت	نموذج بلاستيكي
شاحن الهاتف	كرسي
طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	كمبيوتر لوحي (تابليت)
عبر الأنترنت / متصل بالإنترنت	يضغط يرفق "على أيقونة"

Verbs & Nouns

يكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني

يطبخ الواجب المنزلي

يلعب الشطرنج

يقوم بعمل واجب الحاسب الآلي

تصنع كعكة

يشحن الهاتف

يفوز بمباراة

يجري مكالمة فيديو

يلتقط صورة سيلفي

يرسل (صورة / رسالة نصية)

يصنع نموذج

يصمم أيقونة

ينقر أيقونة «بالموس»

يتصفح موقع الإنترنت

Homework Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sally is describing her new classroom to her father.

Father : Welcome back, dear. How was your day at school?

Sally : It was very ① The school is very good.

Father : How about your classroom?

Sally : The classroom is so modern. It has ② in it.

Father : How many computers are ③ ?

Sally : It has seven computers.

Father : ④ ?

Sally : Yes, there are three tablets.

Father : Do you like your school?

Sally : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She is a new story at present.

- a** write **b** writing **c** wrote **d** writes

2. The printer is to the laptop.

- a** in front **b** under **c** behind **d** next

3. We can buy books online on this

- a** website **b** selfie **c** charger **d** diary

4. I took a and posted it on Facebook.

- a** self **b** myself **c** selfie **d** safe

5. There a big whiteboard in our classroom.

- a** am **b** is **c** are **d** does

6. Tap the icon on the screen of the to send the message.

- a** table **b** tape **c** tap **d** tablet

7. I can listen to songs on my MP3

- a** printer **b** player **c** user **d** charger

8. We use 3D to make models.

- a** players **b** painters **c** printers **d** users

9. Leila wants to _____ her tablet; the battery is only 5%.
a charge **b** click **c** print **d** design
10. My father is an engineer. He _____ a new library at the moment.
a build **b** builds **c** building **d** is building
11. My sister is making a video _____.
a call **b** cool **c** mall **d** bell
12. Mr Muhammad asked his student to write a word on the _____.
a mouse **b** charger **c** whiteboard **d** printer
13. They're _____ to music now.
a listen **b** listened **c** listens **d** listening
14. There _____ a lot of photos on the internet.
a are **b** is **c** was **d** has
15. _____ there any tomatoes in the bag?
a Is **b** Was **c** Are **d** Have

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- There are some water in the glass. (_____)
- 2- He isn't study at present. (_____)
- 3- I read a story now. (_____)
- 4- There is many people in our family. (_____)
- 5- Someone use my computer at the moment. (_____)
- 6- There aren't some pupils in the classroom. (_____)
- 7- The students are doing the test yesterday. (_____)
- 8- There are some rice in the kitchen. (_____)

4 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"Technology"

Lessons

3

4



هواية	في الخارج / خارج
مكالمة فيديو	راقصة
فترة راحة (فسخة) / يكسر	برنامج
متشابه	قاموس
يعطي نصيحة	مشمس
محادثة	حذاء اسود
زهرة	متجر - محل
طائر	حديقة
السماء	يلوح بيده
حيوان	يمثل بالإشارة
الغُقاب (طائر جارح)	يخمن
حشرة	لديه هواية
زي مدرسي	ألعاب الفيديو
يرفق يده	الطبيعة
	يدون ملاحظات
يطير طائرة ورقية	يحتاج مساعدة

Homework Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ramzy is talking to his friend Karim about people in the garden.

Ramzy : What are those boys doing there?

Karim : They are 1

Ramzy : Do you know how to fly a kite?

Karim : No, but my friend Samy 2
how to fly a kite tomorrow.

Ramzy : 3 ?

Karim : They're playing football?

Ramzy : 4 ?

Karim : No, my brother isn't playing with them.

Ramzy : Is your mum preparing lunch now?

Karim : 5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. you feeling well at present?

- a** Is **b** Have **c** Are **d** Do

2. It's hot, I like to go for a walk.

- a** inside **b** side **c** outside **d** side

3. The famous man turned and to his fans with a smile.

- a** guessed **b** waved **c** boiled **d** stayed

4. Sama cooking dinner now?

- a** Has **b** Will **c** Is **d** Are

5. Reading is my favourite

- a** hobby **b** note **c** hope **d** advice

6. Ali is really clever. He can the meanings of new words easily.

- a** break **b** guess **c** call **d** phone

7. There were some in the old attic.

- a** beaches **b** dancers **c** gardens **d** insects

8. I watched a _____ about healthy food yesterday.
☐ programme ☐ hobby ☐ break ☐ shop
9. The weather today is warm and _____.
☐ funny ☐ snowy ☐ sunny ☐ wavy
10. I use a/an _____ to learn about the meanings of new words.
☐ selfie ☐ dictionary ☐ icon ☐ diary
11. Who _____ for you outside now?
☐ was waiting ☐ waited ☐ wait ☐ is waiting
12. You can talk with your classmate when you are at _____.
☐ break ☐ plate ☐ class ☐ lesson
13. No, I _____ reading any books at this moment.
☐ am ☐ am not ☐ was ☐ will
14. The family went on a picnic to enjoy _____.
☐ culture ☐ sky ☐ break ☐ nature
15. Emad _____ at present. He's looking for a job.
☐ isn't working ☐ won't work ☐ is working ☐ works

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1- I'm listening to songs now. I don't have an MP3 player. (_____)
- 2- Does Hala cleaning the house at the moment? (_____)
- 3- A: What were they doing?
 B: They're watching TV. (_____)
- 4- Yasser doesn't playing chess at present. (_____)
- 5- I is watching a new film on TV now. (_____)

4 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"Technology in your school"

Lessons

5 & 6



سرى / سر	التكنولوجيا
يشغل (جهاز)	تعليمات
يغلى «للماء»	آمن
كيس شاي	ياتي للمنزل
سكر	كلمة المرور
يبقى آمناً	شخصي
رقم الهاتف	أحد الوالدين
أيقونة «إرسال»	يتصل بالانترنت
أيقونة الرسائل	البقية
آيس كريم	ملصق
غلاية	عنوان (رئيسي)
فنجان / كأس	ملون
مشروب شعبي (محبوب)	نمط الخط (بونط)
يكون صداقات مع	يحافظ على ... سرى
يبدو شيئاً	قلق بشأن

Homework

Exercises on Speaking & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Eman is making friends online.

Eman : Hello! Randa.

Randa : Hello! Eman. What **1** on the internet?

Eman : I'm talking to a new friend.

Randa : Be careful! Don't **2** with people you don't know online.

Eman : You're right.

Randa : Always **3** your passwords secret.

Eman : OK! Can I send her a photo?

Randa : No, **4** send photos to people you don't know.

Eman : Thanks for your **5** , Randa.

Randa : You're welcome.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To make tea, first, some water.

a turn

b boil

c play

d burn

2. Mr Ali always gives us clear on the homework.

a structures

b cultures

c instructions

d natures

3. Put some water in a to make tea.

a cattle

b spoon

c pan

d kettle

4. It's too dark. Please, turn the light

a on

b off

c to

d into

5. I can't tell you my card number. It's

a secret

b famous

c late

d happy

6. You shouldn't tell people you don't know your _____ information.
a reason **b** personal **c** season **d** person
7. _____ to keep safe online.
a To try **b** Trying **c** Try **d** Tried
8. _____ play with knives. It's dangerous.
a Doesn't **b** Not **c** Didn't **d** Never
9. My brother is ill and my mother is worried _____ him.
a on **b** of **c** about **d** up
10. My grandfather drinks his coffee without _____.
a sugar **b** café **c** icon **d** flower
11. Always _____ polite to other people.
a to be **b** be **c** being **d** to being
12. I can't open the mobile; I don't know the _____.
a word **b** passport **c** password **d** passage
13. _____ watch that film. It's boring.
a Always **b** Don't **c** Haven't **d** Aren't
14. The police work hard to make people _____.
a safe **b** silly **c** tasty **d** heavy



كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية

احجز نسختك من

المراجعة النهائية

الصف الاول الاعدادي
تدريبات - امتحانات

Test on Units 3 & 4

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب.

- The speaker is talking about his / her
 a technology b house c street d classroom
- There are computers in the place.
 a two b four c three d five
- The place is
 a small b old c modern d clean
- The speaker's like the place.
 a friends b family c brothers d sisters

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nour and Walid are talking about their new school.

Nour : Hello, Walid. What do you think of our new school?

Walid : Hello, Nour. 1

Nour : There are many 2 in the class.

Walid : Yes, they help us to use technology.

Nour : What 3 ?

Walid : English is great; the teacher of English is very friendly.

Nour : What 4 ?

Walid : Computer science is also interesting.

Nour : I want to know how to use the tablet.

Walid : 5 I can help you.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Our teacher, Mr Fathy asked us to do research on technology. I had a group of four students to finish it. I said that we could write about tablets,

computers and other technological things. The group took some pictures in front of the computers and some other selfies next to the tablets and did the research. Our teacher was very surprised that we wrote about things that were really in our school. We won the first prize.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What did Mr Fathy ask the class to do?

2. What did the group write about?

3. How was the research?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "it" refers to _____.

- a** the class **b** the school **c** the group **d** the research

5. The group took some _____.

- a** cameras **b** screens **c** selfies **d** books

6. The group won the _____ prize.

- a** last **b** first **c** second **d** third

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My phone isn't working; I need a _____.

- a** cattle **b** charger **c** printer **d** kettle

2. Salma likes to take _____ of herself.

- a** tablets **b** mobiles **c** selfies **d** songs

3. _____ speak loudly in the library, Amir!

- a** Don't **b** Not **c** Do **d** Often

4. My aunt is a doctor. Now she _____ in a big hospital.

- a** work **b** working **c** is working **d** worked

5. Rofaida is sitting next _____ her best friend at school.
☐ a under ☐ b at ☐ c on ☐ d to
6. I saw some _____ in my grandfather's garden.
☐ a icons ☐ b insects ☐ c websites ☐ d tablets
7. My mother gave me some _____ on how to use my computer.
☐ a instructions ☐ b letters ☐ c pens ☐ d shoes
8. Don't tell other people your _____.
☐ a poster ☐ b game ☐ c bag ☐ d password
9. There _____ a new tablet on the desk.
☐ a were ☐ b are ☐ c is ☐ d am
10. We need to _____ water before we make tea.
☐ a boil ☐ b turn ☐ c play ☐ d burn

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Shady watch TV at the moment. (-----)
2. Never coming to school late. (-----)
3. Is there any tablets in your class? (-----)
4. Being good to your classmates. (-----)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"The importance of the internet"

Unit 5 We're using technology

Lessons

1 & 2



شاطئ	الطقس
دافئ	دولة المغرب
صحراء	قلعة من الرمال
جبل	نزهة خلوية
غابة كبيرة	خريطة
بحيرة	متحف
رائع	صخر
نهر	صدى صوت
غابة استوائية / ادغال	فندق
بحر	خفافش
عطلة / إجازة	خيمة
مرعوب	لذيذ
واحة سيوة	دور / يلف
شلال	الصحراء الكبرى
	كهف
	رمل

Verbs & Nouns

يشاهد جمل

يركب دراجة

ينام في خيمة

يلعب ألعاب

يسبح في البحر/البحيرة

ياكل طعاماً لذيذاً

يزور أسرة

يقوم بنزهة خلوية

يبنى قلعة رملية

يدخل كهفاً

يتسلق جبل

Homework

Exercises on Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'd like to go to the _____ and swim in the sea.
 a café b forest c beach d jungle
2. There is a lot of _____ in deserts.
 a sand b salt c water d rain
3. Mona likes Friday because it is a _____.
 a river b desert c holiday d hotel
4. When I went to the Pyramids, I _____ a camel.
 a ride b rides c riding d rode
5. There are a lot of trees in a _____.
 a desert b forest c sea d river
6. It's sunny and the _____ is fine.
 a feather b time c colour d weather
7. A _____ is a big hole in the side of a mountain.
 a cave b valley c wave d river
8. I think this is a good place where we can put up our _____.
 a flat b break c train d tent
9. _____ climbing is very difficult.
 a River b Sky c Mountain d Desert
10. When I went to El Fayoum, I visited Wadi El Rayan _____.
 a classes b water sports c water taps d waterfalls
11. _____ she watch TV yesterday?
 a Does b Did c Was d Is
12. Mr Ahmed _____ to England in 2008.
 a travelled b travels c travel d travelling



رائع	يتذكر
ملكة	منظر / مشهد
يقيم	يستمتع بـ
قلعة	فندق
سوق	إعلان
دولفين	ودود / اليف / مستأنس
علم / راية	ثقافة
هدية تذكارية	جولة الركوب (في الملاهي مثلاً)
يشترى	بيتزا
يعسكر / يخيم	رحلات سفاري
حقاً؟	عين أو عجلة لندن
شقة للإجازة	مدرسة لتعليم اللغات
حيوان بحري	
يركب حصان	نشاط في إجازة
ياكل على العشاء	يتناول العشاء
برامج للإجازات	يذهب في إجازة

Homework

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourists _____ all around the world visit Egypt.
 a for b from c with d by
2. A _____ is a woman who rules a country.
 a queen b king c prince d waiter
3. I learned English in a big _____ school.
 a maths b language c science d art
4. There are _____ of different countries in front of the building.
 a flags b flats c flashes d films
5. This company offers different holiday _____.
 a coats b classes c lessons d courses
6. We go to the _____ to buy vegetables.
 a beach b sea c market d mountain
7. Salma bought a flat with a _____ of the Nile.
 a view b playground c review d revision
8. Mo'men stayed in a _____ for ten days when he visited Hurghada.
 a street b hotel c river d cupboard
9. Ali and I arrived home at the _____ time.
 a some b few c same d many
10. I bought a lot of _____ to remember my holiday in Paris.
 a engineers b queens c castles d souvenirs

2 Write a paragraph about Eighty (80) words on:

"A holiday you spent last week"



قاعدة	مثير
عاصف / شديد الرياح	لافتة
قمامة	صندل
بطاقة بريدية	رأس «بريد إلكتروني»
حيوان القوقع	مقهى
وقت الاستحمام	توقيع
تذكرة	تحية
سلة مهملات	ضوء / مصباح
تي شيرت	متعب
مغلق	الراسل
خاتمة	الفن
شيق	سائح
رياح	بنطلون قصير «شورت»
برج	عشب / حشائش
مسرحية	يمر بـ
يحدث	

Homework

Exercises on Speaking & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona is going to the desert.

Samah : Hello! Mona.

Mona : Hello! Samah.

Samah : Where would you ① to spend your next holiday?

Mona : I ② to go to the desert.

Samah : What ③ you do there?

Mona : We can sleep ④ or go into a cave!

Samah : How ⑤ !

Mona : We can climb hills, too.

Samah : I'd like to join you.

Mona : OK! It'll be a nice holiday.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a small, slow insect.

a snack

b snail

c snow

d souvenir

2. A lot of come to Egypt to see the Pyramids.

a towns

b towers

c tours

d tourists

3. All students must follow the school

a rules

b roles

c towers

d tours

4. The football match was I liked it very much.

a boring

b tiring

c interesting

d interested

5. The tourists enjoyed the fine weather and the water.

a dark

b windy

c clear

d polluted

6. We send our friends on their birthday.

a postcards

b tourists

c rules

d tickets

7. The boat trip we went on yesterday was

a strong

b kind

c excited

d exciting

8. We must buy for that wonderful film.

a letters

b tickets

c arts

d lights

9. The says, "Keep out of the grass."

a signature

b sender

c sign

d post

10. Please, put the in this bin.

a litter

b desk

c letter

d team

11. We wear in our foot.

a shorts

b gloves

c earrings

d sandals

Unit 6 Let's eat

Lessons 1 & 2



بسكويت	إناء صغير (طاسة)
سلطة	قرفة (من التوابل)
تين	ثلاجة
مقادير اكلة	تقديم
(مقدار) ملعقة شاي	يغلي - يسلق
حمص (طحينة)	يضيف
مكسرات	يقلب
زيتون	جوز الهند
جبن	دولاب
رقائق بطاطس مقلية	معدات
زبيب	كامل / كل
سكر	رائع / ممتاز
وصفة طهي	طبق (مسطح)
أرز باللبن	سلطانية
فلفل (من الخضروات)	يشارك / يتقاسم
يقرر	ملح

Homework

Exercises on Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- There is _____ cheese. Don't buy any.
 a many b a lot c enough d any
- You should _____ the sugar in the tea before you drink it.
 a drink b stir c peel d float
- _____ help our bodies to grow strong. They are healthy.
 a Nuts b Crisps c Sweets d salt
- There isn't _____ meat in the kitchen.
 a many b some c any d a
- Mum can cook really well. She knows wonderful _____.
 a plates b lists c areas d recipes
- _____ some milk to the tea to make tea with milk.
 a Start b Add c Stand d Stop
- The _____ is used to keep food cool.
 a bridge b page c passage d fridge
- _____ are my favourite fruit.
 a Eggs b Figs c Bags d Flags
- Some people put _____ on the top of rice pudding.
 a salt b olives c salad d raisins
- There _____ some bread on the table.
 a are b is c aren't d have
- If you _____ water, it will be safer to drink.
 a offer b turn c boil d tidy
- There _____ any nuts in koshari.
 a isn't b can't c are d aren't
- You need some _____ to make rice pudding.
 a ingredients b eggs c salt d teams
- Would you like _____ cake?
 a some b many c lots d a lot

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- There is many sugar in my tea. (_____)
- There isn't some sugar in fish. (_____)
- Any people like to buy old cars. (_____)
- There are too much tomatoes in today's dish. (_____)
- Don't go to the market; we have many food. (_____)

Lessons 3 & 4



كعك	قطعة
نوع	وجبة خفيفة
خضروات	حلو المذاق
حريص	جوعان
عصير فواكه	اسنان
مكرونة	وقت العشاء
بصل	دهون
جسد	وجبة
اناء للطهي	تقليدي
يتذوق/طعم	ينظف
يسبب	يغسل
يلمس	توابل
يجفف	قارة إفريقيا
مشروبات غازية	صحي
وقت الغداء	وزن
مرض	يجرب (طعام مثلاً)

Homework

Exercises on Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We _____ throw rubbish in the streets.
 a shouldn't b should c can d are
2. Carrots are healthy _____.
 a fruits b cakes c vegetables d fish
3. Could you stop _____ noise, please?
 a make b making c to making d makes
4. Tourists like to try _____ food in Egypt.
 a ingredients b meat c nuts d traditional
5. _____ is one of the main ingredients of koshari.
 a Pizza b Nuts c Pasta d Vegetables
6. We can add _____ to food to make it delicious.
 a spoons b spaces c forks d spices
7. We _____ fish from the nearby lake.
 a bake b catch c decide d go
8. Most people eat three _____ a day.
 a meals b spices c water d meat
9. Fruit is a great snack with a sweet _____.
 a test b toast c taste d task
10. I eat _____ between meals.
 a snakes b salt c recipes d snacks
11. _____ I eat different kinds of food?
 a Should b Am c Have d Was
12. We _____ eat healthy food.
 a have b shouldn't c are d should
13. _____ drinks are always bad for our health.
 a Easy b Fizzy c Busy d Lazy

14. You _____ listen to your teacher.

- a** are **b** should to **c** shouldn't **d** should

15. I'd like to _____ dishes I don't know.

- a** visit **b** do **c** try **d** throw

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- What have I do to learn English? (_____)

2- We shouldn't wastes water. (_____)

3- Ali should to do his homework before he goes to bed. (_____)

4- You should eating vegetables and fruits every day. (_____)

5- You should eat too many sweets. (_____)

6- The children shouldn't keep quiet; their father is asleep. (_____)



كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية

احجز نسختك من

المراجعة النهائية

الصف الاول الاعدادي
تدريبات - امتحانات

Lessons

5 & 6



رئيس الطهاة	يتأكد
صحي	جزء
غير صحي	حقيقي
زبون	عصير تفاح
قائمة طعام	نافذة
جرسون / مقدم الطعام	بسبوسة
طماطم	جنيه
حائط	مطعم
يزور	كنافة
التحلية (بعد الطعام)	يامل
بيتزا بالدجاج	طازج
تفضل	يعود إلى
يبدو لذيذ	يشبه
	مقهى / كافيتريا

Homework

Exercises on Speaking & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed advises Tarek to go to a restaurant.

Ahmed : Hello! Tarek.

Tarek : Hello! Ahmed.

Ahmed : You ① go for a meal in the new restaurant.

Tarek : Is there nice food?

Ahmed : Sure, ② I enjoyed eating there yesterday.

Tarek : Is there ③ fish?

Ahmed : Yes, ④ many kinds of fish.

Tarek : Is there ⑤ ?

Ahmed : Yes, there is delicious rice pudding. I tried it.

Tarek : OK! I'll go and eat there.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Look at the and choose your meal.

- ☐ a newspaper ☐ b book ☐ c menu ☐ d magazine

2. The brought the meals very quickly.

- ☐ a water ☐ b winter ☐ c writer ☐ d waiter

3. Eat food. It's healthy.

- ☐ a fresh ☐ b salt ☐ c bad ☐ d fat

4. There is a good in this restaurant. He cooks very well.

- ☐ a chief ☐ b change ☐ c chef ☐ d chin

5. Basbousa and kunafa look I like them.

- ☐ a dangerous ☐ b famous ☐ c delicious ☐ d careless

6. It's to drink many fizzy drinks.

- ☐ a unhealthy ☐ b careful ☐ c safe ☐ d healthy

7. I'd like my pizza with lots of

- ☐ a lists ☐ b chefs ☐ c tomatoes ☐ d pounds

8. It's a nice restaurant. A lot of _____ go there.
 a waiters b customers c pounds d sweets
9. You should _____ sure everything is OK before you leave.
 a make b fall c know d think
10. I don't like this coffee; it's too _____.
 a popular b sweet c fresh d delicious

Test on Units 5 & 6

A Listening

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب.

1. The speaker went to _____ last Friday.
 a school b the park c the cinema d a restaurant
2. The speaker went with his _____.
 a friend b brother c wife d mother
3. The speaker had _____ there.
 a breakfast b dinner c lunch d tea
4. The speaker says the _____ was friendly.
 a street b waiter c place d customer

B Language Functions

- 2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mariam is talking to Khalid about her last holiday.

Khalid : Good morning, Mariam. Tell me about your holiday.

Mariam : Oh! It was great. I spent it ① _____ the beach.

Khalid : Where did you ② _____ ?

Mariam : I went to Mersa Matruh.

Khalid : How was the weather like?

Mariam : ③ _____

- Khalid** : What else ④ ?
- Mariam** : I swam in the sea and ⑤ sandcastles.
- Khalid** : I'll ask my father to take us there.
- Mariam** : I'm sure you will like it.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Food is very important for us. So, when we choose any kind of food, it should be healthy. I mean it should have a lot of vitamins which we can find them in meat, chicken and fish. Some people like to have much salt in their food, this isn't healthy. We should take care of our health by having fresh water, milk and green vegetables. These are the best kinds of healthy food we should have.

A. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
- Why shouldn't we have food with much salt?
.....
- Do you think vitamins are important? Why / Why not?
.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Meat and chicken have in them.
 a milk b salt c vitamins d water
- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
 a fish b pizza
 c unhealthy food d healthy food
- is very important for our life.
 a Food b Work c Sleep d School

D Vocabulary and Structure**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- When I go to Alexandria, I play on the
 a tent b beach c bed d mountain
- There enough rice pudding for you.
 a were b aren't c are some d is
- Don't drink this tea before you the sugar inside it.
 a boil b move c stir d cook
- What did you for breakfast?
 a had b has c having d have
- In Kenya, people call meat with potatoes
 a snake b snack c stew d tagine
- We have too much salt in our daily meals.
 a should b shouldn't c do d can
- We should look our health all the time.
 a for b from c to d after
- Fresh salad is very for us.
 a healthy b unhealthy c bad d poor
- This restaurant is famous as it has a clever
 a teacher b chef c customer d food
- Koshari has a lot of
 a ingredients b vets c eaters d tables

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

- Menna should have a lot of sugar in her tea. (.....)
- Ahmed doesn't have a picnic yesterday. (.....)
- Karim didn't have some water. (.....)
- Did Sherif went to the zoo last Monday? (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph about **Eighty (80)** words on:

"A healthy meal"

Listening material**Units 1-2****Test**

I live in Fayoum. My father is an engineer. My mother is a doctor. We are very happy to live in a big city.

Units 3-4**Test**

I like my classroom a lot. It is full of interesting things. It has got four computers and eight tablets. Most of my friends like the place and they keep it clean.

Units 5-6**Test**

Last Friday, I had lunch with my friend Hamdy. We ordered chicken, salad and orange juice, the restaurant was clean and the waiter was so friendly.